Comprehensive Latinxua Grammar and Vocabulary Guide

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"

- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)

- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8. Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9. Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10. Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)

10.Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3.Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4.Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5.Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6.Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7.Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8.Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9.Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10.Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1.Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2.Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3.Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4.Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)

5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1.Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2.Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3.Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4.Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5.Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6.Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)

- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8. Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9. Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10. Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11. Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12. Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13. Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14. Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15. Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1. Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2. Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3. Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4. Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5. Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6. Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7. Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8. Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8. Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9. Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10. Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1. Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2. Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3. Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4. Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5. Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6. Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7. Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8. Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9. Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10. Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11. Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12. Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13. Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14. Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15. Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)

2.Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3.Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4.Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5.Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6.Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7.Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8.Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9.Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10.Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11.Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12.Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13.Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14.Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15.Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1.Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2.Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3.Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4.Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5.Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6.Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7.Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8.Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9.Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10.Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)

11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)

- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)

- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)

- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)

- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)

- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)

- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang

Comprehensive Latinxua Grammar and Vocabulary Guide

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"

- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)

- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8. Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9. Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10. Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)

10.Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3.Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4.Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5.Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6.Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7.Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8.Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9.Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10.Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1.Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2.Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3.Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4.Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)

5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1.Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2.Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3.Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4.Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5.Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6.Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)

- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8. Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9. Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10. Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11. Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12. Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13. Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14. Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15. Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1. Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2. Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3. Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4. Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5. Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6. Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7. Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8. Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8. Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9. Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10. Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1. Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2. Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3. Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4. Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5. Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6. Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7. Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8. Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9. Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10. Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11. Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12. Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13. Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14. Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15. Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)

2.Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3.Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4.Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5.Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6.Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7.Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8.Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9.Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10.Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11.Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12.Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13.Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14.Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15.Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1.Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2.Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3.Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4.Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5.Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6.Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7.Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8.Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9.Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10.Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)

11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)

- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)

- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)

- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)

- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)

- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)

- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)

- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)
- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)

- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)
4. Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5. Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1. Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2. Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)

3.Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4.Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5.Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)
- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)

- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)
- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)

- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)
- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)

- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)

2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)
- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)

11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)
- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10. Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1. Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2. Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4. Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5. Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1. Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)
2. Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3. Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4. Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5. Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1. Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)

3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)
3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside

- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)
- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)

11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)

5.Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1.Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2.Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3.Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4.Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5.Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)

- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)

- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)
9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)

- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)
- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but

very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)
4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian

Comprehensive Latinxua Grammar and Vocabulary Guide

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)

- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)

- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8. Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9. Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10. Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)

7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10. Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3. Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4. Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5. Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6. Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7. Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8. Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9. Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10. Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1. Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2. Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3. Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4. Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)

- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1. Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2. Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3. Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4. Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5. Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6. Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8. Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)

- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)

20.Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1.Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2.Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3.Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4.Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5.Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6.Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7.Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8.Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9.Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10.Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11.Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12.Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13.Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14.Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15.Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1. Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2. Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3. Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4. Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5. Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6. Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7. Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8. Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)

7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8. Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9. Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10. Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)

- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1. Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2. Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3. Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4. Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5. Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6. Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7. Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8. Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9. Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10. Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11. Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12. Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13. Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14. Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15. Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)

- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2. Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3. Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4. Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5. Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6. Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7. Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8. Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9. Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10. Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11. Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12. Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13. Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14. Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15. Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1. Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2. Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3. Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4. Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5. Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6. Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7. Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has

no time.)
8. Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9. Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10. Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)

- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)

- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)

- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)

- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)

- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)
- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)

7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)
4. Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5. Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)

- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1. Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2. Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3. Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4. Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5. Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)
- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)

- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)
- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)
- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)

10.Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1.Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2.Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3.Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4.Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5.Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6.Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7.Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8.Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9.Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10.Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1.Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2.Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3.Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4.Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5.Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6.Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7.Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8.Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)

9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)

- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)
- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)

7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)
- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)

10.Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1.Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2.Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3.Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4.Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5.Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1.Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)
2.Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3.Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4.Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5.Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1.Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2.Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3.Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4.Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5.Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)

5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)
3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)
- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)

8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)

3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)

- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)
9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)

- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)
- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)

10.Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1.Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2.Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3.Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like coffee.)
4.Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5.Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6.Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7.Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8.Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1.Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but

still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)
4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she

is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)
5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)
3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll go see you.)
8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)

4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)

10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)

4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)
6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person

you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)
4. Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5. Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6. Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7. Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8. Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9. Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10. Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11. Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12. Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)
13. Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14. Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15. Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2. Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by him/her.)
3. Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7. Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8. Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9. Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10. Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11. Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)

3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)
7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)
15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by

me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)
9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)
4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)

7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)
4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)
5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)

- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)
- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)
- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)
- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)

- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)
- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)
- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)

- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)
- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)
- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)

- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)
- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)
- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)
- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)

- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)
- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)
- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)
- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)

- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)
- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)
- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)
- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)

- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)
- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)
- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)

- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)
- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)
- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)
- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)

- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)
- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)
- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)

- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)
- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)
- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)
- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)
- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)

- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)
- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)

- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)
- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter)

Comprehensive Latinxua Grammar and Vocabulary Guide

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex

- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8. Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9. Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10. Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)

- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10. Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3. Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4. Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5. Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6. Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7. Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8. Shei de shu? (Whose book?)

9.Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10.Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1.Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2.Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3.Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4.Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5.Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6.Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7.Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8.Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1.Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2.Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3.Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)

- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)

4.Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5.Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6.Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7.Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8.Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9.Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10.Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1.Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2.Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3.Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4.Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5.Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6.Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)

- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)

15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8. Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9. Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10. Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11. Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12. Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)

13.Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14.Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15.Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1.Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2.Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3.Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4.Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5.Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6.Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7.Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8.Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9.Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10.Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1.Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2.Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese

food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8. Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9. Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10. Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1. Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2. Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3. Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4. Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5. Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6. Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7. Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8. Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9. Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10. Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11. Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12. Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13. Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14. Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15. Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2. Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3. Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4. Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5. Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6. Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7. Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8. Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9. Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10. Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11. Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12. Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13. Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14. Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15. Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1. Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2. Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3. Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4. Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5. Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6. Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7. Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8. Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9. Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10. Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)

- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)

- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)

6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)
- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)
4. Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5. Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1. Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2. Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3. Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4. Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5. Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)
- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)

- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)
- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)

- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)
- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)

3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)

5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)

- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)
- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)
- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)

3.Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4.Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5.Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6.Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7.Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8.Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9.Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10.Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1.Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2.Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3.Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4.Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5.Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1.Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)
2.Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3.Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4.Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5.Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1.Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)

2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)
3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)

3.Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4.Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5.Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)
- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1.Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)

2.Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3.Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4.Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5.Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6.Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7.Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8.Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9.Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10.Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11.Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12.Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13.Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14.Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15.Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1.Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2.Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3.Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at school.)
4.Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5.Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6.Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7.Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8.Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9.Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10.Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many

museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)

- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)
9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45

minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1.San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2.Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3.Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4.shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5.Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6.Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7.San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8.Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9.Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10.Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)
- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1.Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2.Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3.Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4.Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5.Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)

6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)

- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)
4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so

I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)
5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)

3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll go see you.)
8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)
4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)

7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)
10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)
6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink

every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)
4. Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5. Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6. Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7. Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8. Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9. Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10. Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11. Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12. Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)

13. Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14. Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15. Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2. Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by him/her.)
3. Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7. Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8. Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9. Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10. Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11. Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)
3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)
7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)
15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on

when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)
9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)

4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)
7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)
4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and

busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)
5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)

- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)
- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)
- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)

- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)
- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)
- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)

- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)
- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)
- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)

- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)
- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)
- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)
- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)

- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)
- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)
- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)
- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)

- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)
- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)
- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)
- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)

- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)
- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)
- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)
- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)
- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)
- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)
- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)

- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)
- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)
- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)

- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)
- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)
- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)

- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)
- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)
- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)

- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)
- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)
- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)
- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)
- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter

Comprehensive Latinxua Grammar and Vocabulary Guide

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [p^h] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [t^h] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [k^h] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [ts^h] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration

- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"

- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)

8.Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9.Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10.Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1.Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2.Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3.Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4.Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5.Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6.Na ge difang. (That place.)
7.Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8.Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9.Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10.Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)

2.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3.Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4.Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5.Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6.Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7.Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8.Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9.Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10.Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1.Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2.Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3.Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4.Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5.Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6.Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7.Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8.Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1.Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2.Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3.Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and

don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1. Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2. Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3. Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4. Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5. Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6. Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8. Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)

6.Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7.Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8.Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9.Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10.Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11.Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12.Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13.Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14.Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15.Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16.Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17.Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18.Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19.Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20.Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1.Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2.Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3.Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4.Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to

leave.)
5.Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6.Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7.Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8.Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9.Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10.Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11.Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12.Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13.Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14.Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15.Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1.Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2.Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3.Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4.Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)

5. Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6. Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7. Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8. Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)

4.Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5.Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6.Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7.Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8.Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9.Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10.Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1.Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2.Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3.Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4.Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5.Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6.Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7.Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8.Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9.Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10.Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11.Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12.Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13.Ban chu lai. (Move out.)

14.Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15.Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1.Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2.Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3.Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4.Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5.Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6.Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7.Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8.Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9.Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10.Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11.Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12.Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13.Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14.Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)

15.Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1.Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2.Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3.Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4.Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5.Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6.Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7.Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8.Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9.Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10.Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11.Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12.Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13.Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14.Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15.Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)

- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)

- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)

- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)

- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)
- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)

2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)
4. Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5. Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1. Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2. Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3. Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4. Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5. Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)

- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)
- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)

- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)
- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)

- lan (blue)
- lü (green)
- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)

- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more

beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)

- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)
- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)

- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)
- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10. Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1. Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2. Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4. Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5. Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1. Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)
2. Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3. Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4. Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5. Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1. Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for

work.)
3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)

- limian/libain (inside)
- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)

3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)

- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)

8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)
9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)

4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)

- gangcai (just now)
- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)

3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red

one or the blue one?)
4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)

5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)
3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll

go see you.)
8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)
4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)
10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)

6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)

4.Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5.Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6.Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7.Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8.Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9.Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10.Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11.Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12.Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)
13.Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14.Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15.Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1.Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2.Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by him/her.)
3.Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4.Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5.Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6.Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7.Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8.Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9.Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10.Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11.Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written

wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)
3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)
7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)

15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)
9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)
4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)
7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)

4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)
5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable

and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)
- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)

- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)
- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)
- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)

- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)
- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)
- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)

- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)
- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)
- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)
- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)

- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)
- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)
- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)
- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)

- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)
- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)
- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)
- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)

- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)
- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)
- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)
- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)

- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)
- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)
- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)

- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)
- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)
- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)
- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)
- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)
- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)

- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)
- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)
- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)

- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)
- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)
- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)
- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)
- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter)

Transportation Infrastructure:

- lu (road)

- jie (street)
- gao su gong lu (highway, expressway)
- qiao (bridge)
- sui dao (tunnel)
- che zhan (station)
- huo che zhan (train station)
- gong gong qi che zhan (bus station)
- ji chang (airport)
- gang kou (port, harbor)
- ma tou (dock, wharf)
- jia you zhan (gas station)
- ting che chang (parking lot)
- hong lu deng (traffic light)
- ban ma xian (zebra crossing, crosswalk)

10.8 Buildings and Places

Housing:

- fangzi (house)
- gong yu (apartment)
- bie shu (villa)
- su she (dormitory)
- lü guan (hotel, inn)
- fan dian (hotel, restaurant)

Rooms:

- fangjian (room)
- ke ting (living room)
- wo shi (bedroom)
- chu fang (kitchen)
- can ting (dining room)
- yu shi (bathroom)
- ce suo (toilet, restroom)

- shu fang (study)
- che ku (garage)
- yang tai (balcony)
- yuan zi (yard, courtyard)
- hua yuan (garden)
- wu ding (rooftop)
- di xia shi (basement)

Public Places:

- shangdian (store, shop)
- shang chang (shopping mall)
- chao shi (supermarket)
- shi chang (market)
- yin hang (bank)
- you ju (post office)
- yi yuan (hospital)
- zhen suo (clinic)
- yao dian (pharmacy)
- tu shu guan (library)
- xue xiao (school)
- you er yuan (kindergarten)
- xiao xue (elementary school)
- zhong xue (middle/high school)
- da xue (university)
- gong si (company)
- ban gong shi (office)
- gong chang (factory)
- can guan/fan dian (restaurant)
- ka fei dian (coffee shop)
- cha guan (tea house)
- jiu ba (bar, pub)
- jiu dian (hotel)

- dian ying yuan (cinema, movie theater)
- ju chang (theater)
- bo wu guan (museum)
- mei shu guan (art museum/gallery)
- gong yuan (park)
- dong wu yuan (zoo)
- you le chang (amusement park)
- ti yu guan (stadium, gymnasium)
- you yong chi (swimming pool)
- jiao tang (church)
- si miao (temple)
- qing zhen si (mosque)

City Features:

- cheng shi (city)
- xiang cun (countryside, village)
- shi zhong xin (city center, downtown)
- jie dao (street)
- guang chang (square, plaza)
- gong she (park)
- hu tai yuan (botanical garden)

10.9 Technology and Modern Life

Electronics:

- dian nao (computer)
- bi ji ben dian nao (laptop)
- ping ban dian nao (tablet)
- shou ji (mobile phone)
- zhi neng shou ji (smartphone)
- dian hua (telephone)
- dian shi (television)
- shou yin ji (radio)

- zhao xiang ji (camera)
- lu xiang ji (video camera)
- xiang ji (camera)
- shu ma xiang ji (digital camera)
- ji pan (keyboard)
- shu biao (mouse)
- yin xiang (speaker)
- er ji (headphones)
- mai ke feng (microphone)
- da yin ji (printer)
- sao miao yi (scanner)
- U pan (USB drive)

Internet and Communication:

- hu lian wang/wang lu (internet)
- dian zi you jian (email)
- wang zhan (website)
- wang ye (webpage)
- liu lan qi (browser)
- sou suo yin qing (search engine)
- she jiao mei ti (social media)
- wei xin (WeChat)
- duan xin (text message, SMS)
- shi pin tong hua (video call)
- xu ni xian shi (virtual reality)

Appliances:

- bing xiang (refrigerator)
- xi yi ji (washing machine)
- hong gan ji (dryer)
- wei bo lu (microwave oven)
- kao xiang (oven)
- dian fan (electric fan)

- kong tiao (air conditioner)
- nuan qi (heater)
- chui feng ji (hair dryer)
- dian dong ya shua (electric toothbrush)
- xi chen qi (vacuum cleaner)

10.10 Colors and Descriptions

Colors:

- yan se (color)
- hong se (red)
- huang se (yellow)
- lan se (blue)
- lü se (green)
- hei se (black)
- bai se (white)
- hui se (gray)
- fen hong se (pink)
- cheng se (orange)
- zi se (purple)
- zong se (brown)
- jin se (gold)
- yin se (silver)
- shen (dark, deep)
- qian (light, pale)
- xian yan (bright, vivid)
- an (dark, dim)

Patterns and Textures:

- hua wen (pattern)
- tiao wen (stripe)
- bo dian (polka dot)
- hua (floral pattern)

- guang hua (smooth)
- cu cao (rough)
- ruan (soft)
- ying (hard)

10.11 Emotions and Feelings

Positive Emotions:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuai le (joyful, happy)
- xing fu (blessed, happy)
- man yi (satisfied)
- gan dong (moved, touched)
- ji dong (excited)
- xing fen (excited, thrilled)
- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- man zu (satisfied)
- gan ji (grateful)
- zi hao (proud)
- zi xin (confident)
- xi wang (hope)
- le guan (optimistic)
- ping jing (calm, peaceful)
- qing song (relaxed)
- shu fu (comfortable)

Negative Emotions:

- nan guo (sad)
- shang xin (sad, heartbroken)
- ku (cry, weep)
- sheng qi (angry)
- fen nu (furious, angry)

- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- kong ju (fearful, terrified)
- jin zhang (nervous, tense)
- dan xin (worried)
- jiao lü (anxious)
- ya li (pressure, stress)
- lei (tired)
- pi lao (exhausted, fatigued)
- wu liao (bored)
- ji mo (lonely)
- gu du (solitary, lonely)
- ju sang (disappointed)
- hou hui (regret)
- chou hen (hate)
- ji du (jealous)
- kun huo (confused, puzzled)
- shang xin (upset, sad)

10.12 Activities and Hobbies

Sports:

- yun dong (sport, exercise)
- ti yu (physical education, sports)
- zu qiu (soccer, football)
- lan qiu (basketball)
- wang qiu (tennis)
- ping pang qiu (table tennis)
- pai qiu (volleyball)
- bang qiu (baseball)
- gan lan qiu (rugby, American football)
- yu mao qiu (badminton)
- gao er fu qiu (golf)
- bing qiu (ice hockey)

- hua bing (ice skating)
- hua xue (skiing)
- you yong (swimming)
- tiao shui (diving)
- pao bu (running, jogging)
- qi zi xing che (cycling)
- deng shan (mountain climbing, hiking)
- yu jia (yoga)
- wu shu (martial arts)
- tai ji quan (Tai Chi)
- quan ji (boxing)
- shai ma (horseback riding)

Hobbies:

- ai hao (hobby)
- du shu (reading)
- xie zuo (writing)
- hua hua (painting, drawing)
- she ying (photography)
- yin yue (music)
- chang ge (singing)
- tiao wu (dancing)
- tan gang qin (playing piano)
- tan ji ta (playing guitar)
- la xiao ti qin (playing violin)
- chui chang di (playing flute)
- ting yin yue (listening to music)
- kan dian ying (watching movies)
- kan dian shi (watching television)
- wan you xi (playing games)
- dian zi you xi (video games)
- peng ren (cooking)

- hong bei (baking)
- yuan yi (gardening)
- shou ji (collecting)
- lü you (traveling)
- ye ying (camping)
- diao yu (fishing)
- qi yi (playing chess)
- ma jiang (mahjong)
- pu ke (poker)
- bian zhi (knitting)
- ci xiu (embroidery)

10.13 Education and Learning

School Subjects:

- ke mu (subject, course)
- zhong wen (Chinese language)
- ying wen (English)
- shu xue (mathematics)
- ke xue (science)
- wu li (physics)
- hua xue (chemistry)
- sheng wu (biology)
- li shi (history)
- di li (geography)
- zheng zhi (politics)
- jing ji (economics)
- yi shu (art)
- yin yue (music)
- ti yu (physical education)
- dian nao (computer science)
- wen xue (literature)
- zhe xue (philosophy)

- xin li xue (psychology)
- she hui xue (sociology)
- fa lü (law)
- yi xue (medicine)
- gong cheng (engineering)
- shang ye (business)

School Items:

- shu (book)
- ke ben (textbook)
- bi ji ben (notebook)
- bi (pen)
- qian bi (pencil)
- gang bi (fountain pen)
- yuan zhu bi (ballpoint pen)
- xiang pi (eraser)
- chi (ruler)
- jiao shui (glue)
- jian dao (scissors)
- ding shu ji (stapler)
- jie shu qi (pencil sharpener)
- ji suan qi (calculator)
- zi dian (dictionary)
- di tu (map)
- bei bao (backpack)
- qian bi he (pencil case)
- zhi (paper)

Learning Activities:

- xue xi (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- du (read)
- xie (write)

- ting (listen)
- shuo (speak)
- lian xi (practice, exercise)
- fu xi (review)
- yu xi (preview)
- ji (remember, memorize)
- li jie (understand)
- si kao (think)
- yan jiu (research)
- kao shi (exam, test)
- zuo ye (homework)
- wen ti (question, problem)
- da an (answer)
- fen shu (score, grade)
- cheng ji (grade, achievement)
- bi ye (graduate)
- xue wei (degree)

10.14 Health and Medical Terms

Body Conditions:

- jian kang (healthy)
- sheng bing (to be sick)
- bing (illness, disease)
- teng (pain, ache)
- tou teng (headache)
- ya teng (toothache)
- du zi teng (stomachache)
- fa shao (fever)
- ke sou (cough)
- gan mao (cold, flu)
- liu gan (influenza)
- la du zi (diarrhea)

- ou tu (vomit)
- guo min (allergy)
- shang kou (wound, injury)
- gu zhe (bone fracture)
- shao shang (burn)
- liu xue (bleeding)

Medical Treatment:

- kan bing (see a doctor)
- zhen duan (diagnose)
- zhi liao (treat, treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- zhong yao (Chinese medicine)
- xi yao (Western medicine)
- yao pian (pill, tablet)
- yao shui (liquid medicine)
- da zhen (injection, shot)
- shou shu (surgery, operation)
- jian cha (examination, checkup)
- X guang (X-ray)
- hua yan (blood test)
- ti wen (body temperature)
- xue ya (blood pressure)
- chu fang (prescription)
- bang dai (bandage)
- gao yao (ointment)

Medical Specialists:

- yi sheng (doctor)
- hu shi (nurse)
- wai ke yi sheng (surgeon)
- nei ke yi sheng (physician)
- ya yi (dentist)

- yan ke yi sheng (ophthalmologist)
- er bi hou ke yi sheng (ENT doctor)
- pi fu ke yi sheng (dermatologist)
- er ke yi sheng (pediatrician)
- jing shen ke yi sheng (psychiatrist)

10.15 Money and Shopping

Money:

- qian (money)
- yuan (yuan, Chinese currency unit)
- kuai (colloquial for yuan)
- mao/jiao (10 cents)
- fen (cent)
- ying bi (coin)
- zhi bi (paper money, bill)
- xin yong ka (credit card)
- chu xu ka (debit card)
- xian jin (cash)
- yin hang ka (bank card)
- jia ge (price)
- duo shao qian (how much money)

Shopping:

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell)
- gou wu (shopping)
- gu ke (customer)
- shou huo yuan (salesperson)
- fu qian (pay money)
- zhao qian (give change)
- gui (expensive)
- pian yi (cheap)

- zhe kou (discount)
- da zhe (on sale, discount)
- mian fei (free of charge)
- shou ju (receipt)
- tui huo (return goods)
- huan huo (exchange goods)
- shi chuan (try on clothes)
- bao zhuang (packaging, wrap)
- song huo (delivery)

10.16 Common Verbs - Extended List

Motion Verbs:

- zou (walk, go, leave)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- fei (fly)
- you (swim)
- pa (climb, crawl)
- gun (roll)
- hua (slide)
- kai (drive)
- qi (ride)
- zuo (sit, take [transport])

Action Verbs:

- zuo (do, make)
- gong zuo (work)
- xiu xi (rest)
- shui jiao (sleep)
- qi chuang (get up)
- xi zao (take a bath)
- xi lian (wash face)

- shua ya (brush teeth)
- ti tou (comb hair)
- chuan (wear, put on)
- tuo (take off)
- kai (open, start)
- guan (close, turn off)
- da kai (open)
- guan shang (close)
- na (take, hold)
- fang (put, place)
- song (send, give as gift)
- jie (receive, borrow)
- jie (lend)
- huan (return, give back)
- wen (ask)
- da (answer, reply)
- gao su (tell, inform)
- wen (smell)
- ting (listen)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- kan jian (see, catch sight of)
- ting jian (hear)
- peng (touch)
- mo (touch, feel)

Communication Verbs:

- shuo (speak, say)
- shuo hua (speak, talk)
- jiang (speak, tell)
- tan (chat, talk)
- jiao (call, be named)
- wen (ask)

- hui da (answer, reply)
- jie shi (explain)
- miao shu (describe)
- tao lun (discuss)
- zheng lun (argue, debate)
- da dian hua (make a phone call)
- fa duan xin (send text message)
- fa you jian (send email)

Mental Verbs:

- xiang (think, want)
- si kao (think, ponder)
- ji de (remember)
- wang ji (forget)
- zhi dao (know)
- ren shi (know [people], recognize)
- dong (understand)
- ming bai (understand, realize)
- xiang xin (believe)
- huai yi (doubt)
- xi wang (hope)
- qi dai (expect, look forward to)
- jue de (feel, think)

Emotion Verbs:

- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- tao yan (dislike, hate)
- hai pa (be afraid)
- dan xin (worry)
- gao xing (be happy)
- shang xin (be sad)
- sheng qi (be angry)

- xiao (laugh, smile)
- ku (cry)

Part 11: Sentence Patterns and Expressions

11.1 Greetings and Polite Expressions

Greetings:

1. Ni hao! (Hello!)
2. Nin hao! (Hello! - formal)
3. Da jia hao! (Hello everyone!)
4. Zao shang hao! (Good morning!)
5. Wan shang hao! (Good evening!)
6. Wan an! (Good night!)
7. Ni hao ma? (How are you?)
8. Ni zui jin zen me yang? (How have you been lately?)
9. Hen jiu bu jian! (Long time no see!)
10. Huan ying! (Welcome!)

Farewells:

1. Zai jian! (Goodbye!)
2. Ming tian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
3. Hui tou jian! (See you later!)
4. Yi hui jian! (See you in a bit!)
5. Wan an! (Good night!)
6. Bai bai! (Bye bye!)
7. Zou hao! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
8. Man zou! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
9. Yi lu ping an! (Have a safe journey!)
10. Bao zhong! (Take care of yourself!)

Polite Expressions:

1. Xie xie! (Thank you!)
2. Duo xie! (Thank you very much!)

3.Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)
4.Bu yong xie! (No need to thank!)
5.Mei guan xi! (It's okay! / No problem!)
6.Dui bu qi! (Sorry! / Excuse me!)
7.Mei shi! (It's nothing! / No problem!)
8.Qing! (Please!)
9.Qing wen! (Excuse me, may I ask...)
10.Ma fan ni le! (Sorry to trouble you!)
11.Bu hao yi si! (Sorry! / Embarrassed!)
12.Zhen bao qian! (I'm really sorry!)
13.Qing yuan liang! (Please forgive me!)
14.Mei you guan xi! (It doesn't matter!)
15.Zhu ni hao yun! (Good luck!)

Making Requests:

1.Qing bang mang! (Please help!)
2.Ke yi bang wo ma? (Can you help me?)
3.Qing gei wo... (Please give me...)
4.Wo xiang yao... (I would like...)
5.Ke yi ma? (Is it okay? / May I?)
6.Qing shao deng! (Please wait a moment!)
7.Qing zai shuo yi bian! (Please say it again!)
8.Qing shuo man yi dian! (Please speak slower!)
9.Qing wen... (May I ask... / Excuse me...)
10.Neng bu neng...? (Can you...?)

11.2 Common Question Patterns

What Questions:

1.Zhe shi shen me? (What is this?)
2.Ni zai zuo shen me? (What are you doing?)
3.Ni xiang chi shen me? (What do you want to eat?)
4.Ni de ming zi shi shen me? (What is your name?)
5.Ni de gong zuo shi shen me? (What is your job?)
6.Zhe ge zen me shuo? (How do you say this?)
7.Shen me yi si? (What does it mean?)

8.Fa sheng le shen me shi? (What happened?)
9.Ni you shen me wen ti? (What questions do you have?)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Who Questions:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2.Ta shi shei? (Who is he/she?)
3.Shei zai nar? (Who is there?)
4.Shei de? (Whose is it?)
5.Ni zhao shei? (Who are you looking for?)
6.Shei lai le? (Who came?)
7.Shei zhi dao? (Who knows?)
8.Shei xiang qu? (Who wants to go?)
9.Ni gen shei qu? (Who are you going with?)
10.Shei jiao ni de? (Who taught you?)

Where Questions:

1.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
2.Ni qu nar? (Where are you going?)
3.Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
4.Ce suo zai nar? (Where is the bathroom?)
5.Zhe ge zai nar mai? (Where can I buy this?)
6.Ni cong nar lai? (Where are you from?)
7.Ni de shu zai nar? (Where is your book?)
8.Wo men zai nar jian mian? (Where shall we meet?)
9.Ta qu nar le? (Where did he/she go?)
10.Ni xiang qu nar? (Where do you want to go?)

When Questions:

1.Shen me shi hou? (When?)
2.Ji dian? (What time?)
3.Ji yue? (What month?)
4.Ji hao? (What date?)
5.Xing qi ji? (What day of the week?)
6.Ni shen me shi hou lai? (When will you come?)
7.Ni ji dian qi chuang? (What time do you get up?)

8. Ni shen me shi hou you kong? (When are you free?)
9. Huo che ji dian kai? (What time does the train leave?)
10. Ni shen me shi hou chu sheng? (When were you born?)

How Questions:

1. Zen me yang? (How is it? / How about it?)
2. Zen me qu? (How to go?)
3. Zen me zuo? (How to do it?)
4. Zen me shuo? (How to say it?)
5. Zen me hui shi? (What's going on? / How come?)
6. Ni zen me le? (What's wrong with you?)
7. Zen me ban? (What to do?)
8. Zhe ge zen me yong? (How to use this?)
9. Zen me zou? (How to get there?)
10. Ni jue de zen me yang? (What do you think? / How do you feel about it?)

Why Questions:

1. Wei shen me? (Why?)
2. Ni wei shen me bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
3. Wei shen me bu xing? (Why not?)
4. Ta wei shen me sheng qi? (Why is he/she angry?)
5. Ni wei shen me zhe me wan? (Why are you so late?)
6. Wei shen me bu ke yi? (Why can't [we/I]?)
7. Ni wei shen me bu chi? (Why don't you eat?)
8. Wei shen me yao zhe yang? (Why must it be this way?)
9. Ta wei shen me ku? (Why is he/she crying?)
10. Wei shen me mei you ren? (Why is there no one?)

How Many/Much Questions:

1. Duo shao? (How many? / How much?)
2. Ji ge? (How many?)
3. Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
4. Ni you ji ge xiong di jie mei? (How many siblings do you have?)

5.Ni duo da? / Ni ji sui? (How old are you?)
6.Duo yuan? (How far?)
7.Duo jiu? (How long [time]?)
8.Duo chang? (How long [length]?)
9.Ni you duo gao? (How tall are you?)
10.Duo zhong? (How heavy?)

11.3 Making Suggestions and Offers

Suggestions:

1.Women qu kan dian ying ba! (Let's go watch a movie!)
2.Zhe yang hao bu hao? (How about this?)
3.Ni kan zen me yang? (What do you think?)
4.Wo jian yi... (I suggest...)
5.Ni jue de... zen me yang? (What do you think about...?)
6.Bu ru... (How about...? / Why don't we...?)
7.Women ke yi... (We can...)
8.Yao bu yao...? (Do you want to...?)
9.Women zou ba! (Let's go!)
10.Hao bu hao? (Is that okay? / Okay?)

Offers:

1.Wo lai bang ni! (Let me help you!)
2.Wo qing ni! (My treat! / It's on me!)
3.Yao bu yao wo bang ni? (Do you want me to help you?)
4.Wo gei ni... (I'll give you... / Let me give you...)
5.Rang wo lai! (Let me do it!)
6.Wo song ni! (I'll give it to you! / I'll take you!)
7.Ni xiang bu xiang...? (Would you like to...?)
8.Wo neng wei ni zuo shen me? (What can I do for you?)
9.Wo lai fu qian! (Let me pay!)
10.Wo gei ni da dian hua! (I'll call you!)

11.4 Expressing Opinions and Preferences

Likes and Dislikes:

1.Wo xi huan... (I like...)
2.Wo hen xi huan... (I really like...)
3.Wo zui xi huan... (I like...the most / My favorite is...)
4.Wo ai... (I love...)
5.Wo bu xi huan... (I don't like...)
6.Wo tao yan... (I hate...)
7.Wo bu tai xi huan... (I don't really like...)
8.Wo dui...gan xing qu. (I'm interested in...)
9.Wo dui...mei xing qu. (I'm not interested in...)
10.Wo xi huan...duo yu... (I like...more than...)

Opinions:

1.Wo jue de... (I think... / I feel...)
2.Wo ren wei... (I believe... / In my opinion...)
3.Wo de yi jian shi... (My opinion is...)
4.Wo tong yi. (I agree.)
5.Wo bu tong yi. (I disagree.)
6.Ni shuo de dui. (You're right.)
7.Wo bu zhe me xiang. (I don't think so.)
8.Ke neng ba. (Maybe. / Perhaps.)
9.Dang ran! (Of course!)
10.Que shi shi zhe yang. (That's indeed the case.)
11.Wo bu que ding. (I'm not sure.)
12.Wo ye zhe me xiang. (I think so too.)
13.Ni jue de ne? (What do you think?)
14.Zhe shi hao zhu yi! (That's a good idea!)
15.Zhe bu shi hao ban fa. (This is not a good solution.)

11.5 Expressing Ability and Possibility

Ability:

1.Wo hui... (I can... / I know how to...)
2.Wo neng... (I can... / I'm able to...)
3.Wo ke yi... (I can... / I may...)
4.Wo bu hui... (I can't... / I don't know how to...)
5.Wo zuo de dao. (I can do it.)

6.Wo zuo bu dao. (I can't do it.)
7.Wo xue hui le. (I learned it / I know how now.)
8.Ta hen neng gan. (He/she is very capable.)
9.Wo you neng li. (I have the ability.)
10.Wo ban de dao. (I can manage it.)

Possibility:

1.Ke neng. (Possible. / Maybe.)
2.You ke neng. (It's possible.)
3.Mei ke neng. / Bu ke neng. (Impossible.)
4.Ye xu. (Perhaps.)
5.Hui...de. (Will... / Likely to...)
6.Bu hui...de. (Won't... / Unlikely to...)
7.Da gai. (Probably.)
8.Huo xu. (Perhaps. / Maybe.)
9.Shuo bu ding. (Hard to say. / Maybe.)
10.Nan shuo. (Hard to say.)

11.6 Expressing Needs and Wants

Wants:

1.Wo yao... (I want...)
2.Wo xiang... (I would like to...)
3.Wo xiang yao... (I want...)
4.Wo bu yao. (I don't want.)
5.Wo xi wang... (I hope...)
6.Wo qin dai... (I look forward to...)
7.Wo yuan yi... (I'm willing to... / I'd like to...)
8.Wo xiang mai... (I want to buy...)
9.Ni yao shen me? (What do you want?)
10.Ni xiang yao shen me? (What would you like?)

Needs:

1.Wo xu yao... (I need...)
2.Wo bi xu... (I must...)
3.Wo dei... (I have to... / I must...)

4.Wo ying gai... (I should...)
5.Wo yao... (I need to... / I have to...)
6.Wo bu bi... (I don't need to...)
7.Wo bu xu yao. (I don't need.)
8.Zhe shi bi yao de. (This is necessary.)
9.Wo xu yao bang zhu. (I need help.)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Part 12: Dialogue Examples

12.1 Meeting Someone

Dialogue 1: First Meeting

A: Ni hao! Wo jiao Li Ming. (Hello! My name is Li Ming.) B: Ni hao! Wo jiao Wang Hong. Hen gao xing ren shi ni. (Hello! My name is Wang Hong. Nice to meet you.) A: Wo ye hen gao xing ren shi ni. Ni shi na guo ren? (I'm also happy to meet you. What nationality are you?) B: Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Ni ne? (I'm Chinese. And you?) A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where

A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where do you live?) B: Wo zhu zai Beijing. (I live in Beijing.) A: Ni zuo shen me gong zuo? (What do you do for work?) B: Wo shi laoshi. Ni ne? (I'm a teacher. And you?) A: Wo shi xue sheng. Wo zai xue Zhong wen. (I'm a student. I'm studying Chinese.) B: Ni de Zhong wen shuo de hen hao! (Your Chinese is very good!) A: Xie xie! Dan shi wo hai xu yao duo lian xi. (Thank you! But I still need more practice.)

Dialogue 2: At a Coffee Shop

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ni xiang he dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to drink?) B: Qing gei wo yi bei re ka fei. (Please give me a cup of hot coffee.) A: Hao de. Yao bu yao tang he nai? (Okay. Do you want sugar and

milk?) B: Zhi yao nai, bu yao tang. (Just milk, no sugar.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Hai yao yi ge san ming zhi. (I also want a sandwich.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) B: Yi gong duo shao qian? (How much in total?) A: Yi gong san shi wu kuai. (35 yuan in total.) B: Zhe shi wu shi kuai. (Here's 50 yuan.) A: Zhao ni shi wu kuai. Xie xie! (Here's your 15 yuan change. Thank you!)

12.2 Daily Conversations

Dialogue 3: Talking About Weather

A: Jin tian tian qi zen me yang? (How's the weather today?) B: Jin tian tian qi hen hao, yang guang ming mei. (The weather is great today, sunny and bright.) A: Shi a, hen shi he chu qu san bu. (Yes, very suitable for going out for a walk.) B: Ming tian hui xia yu ma? (Will it rain tomorrow?) A: Ting shuo ming tian hui xia yu. (I heard it will rain tomorrow.) B: Na wo men zui hao dai san. (Then we'd better bring umbrellas.) A: Ni xi huan shen me ji jie? (What season do you like?) B: Wo zui xi huan qiu tian, bu re ye bu leng. (I like autumn best, not hot and not cold.) A: Wo ye shi! Qiu tian de tian qi zui shu fu. (Me too! Autumn weather is the most comfortable.)

Dialogue 4: Making Plans

A: Zhou mo ni you kong ma? (Are you free this weekend?) B: You a, ni you shen me ji hua? (Yes, do you have any plans?) A: Wo men qu pa shan ba! (Let's go hiking!) B: Hao zhu yi! Ji dian chu fa? (Good idea! What time should we leave?) A: Zao shang ba dian zen me yang? (How about 8 o'clock in the morning?) B: Tai zao le ba. Shi dian hao ma? (That's too early. Is 10 o'clock okay?) A: Hao de. Wo men zai di tie zhan jian mian. (Okay. Let's meet at the subway station.) B: Xu yao dai shen me? (What do we need to bring?) A: Dai shui he yi dian chi de. (Bring water and some

snacks.) B: Hao de. Na zhou liu jian! (Okay. See you Saturday!) A: Zhou liu jian! (See you Saturday!)

12.3 Shopping Dialogues

Dialogue 5: Buying Clothes

A: Huan ying guang lin! Xu yao bang mang ma? (Welcome! Do you need help?) B: Wo xiang kan yi xia yi fu. (I'd like to look at clothes.) A: Ni xi huan shen me yan se? (What color do you like?) B: Wo xi huan lan se de. (I like blue.) A: Zhe jian lan se de chen shan zen me yang? (How about this blue shirt?) B: Hen hao kan. Duo shao qian? (Very nice. How much is it?) A: Yi bai ba shi kuai. (180 yuan.) B: Tai gui le! Neng bu neng pian yi yi dian? (Too expensive! Can it be cheaper?) A: Xian zai zheng zai da zhe, jiu zhe ge jia ge. (It's on sale now, this is the price.) B: Wo ke yi shi chuan ma? (Can I try it on?) A: Dang ran ke yi. Shi yi jian zai na bian. (Of course. The fitting room is over there.) B: Xie xie! (Thank you!)

Dialogue 6: At the Market

A: Zhe ge pin guo duo shao qian yi jin? (How much is this apple per jin?) B: Wu kuai yi jin. (5 yuan per jin.) A: Tai gui le! Si kuai zen me yang? (Too expensive! How about 4 yuan?) B: Bu xing! Zui di si kuai wu. (No way! Lowest is 4.5 yuan.) A: Hao ba. Gei wo liang jin. (Okay. Give me two jin.) B: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) A: Zhe ge ju zi zen me mai? (How do you sell these oranges?) B: Liu kuai yi jin. (6 yuan per jin.) A: Gei wo yi jin ba. (Give me one jin.) B: Hao de. Yi gong shi wu kuai wu. (Okay. 15.5 yuan in total.) A: Zhe shi er shi kuai. (Here's 20 yuan.) B: Zhao ni si kuai wu. (Your change is 4.5 yuan.)

12.4 Travel and Directions

Dialogue 7: Asking for Directions

A: Qing wen, qu huo che zhan zen me zou? (Excuse me, how do I get to the train station?) B: Ni ke yi zuo di tie huo zhe gong gong qi che. (You can take the subway or bus.) A: Zuo di tie yuan bu yuan? (Is it far by subway?) B: Bu yuan, zhi you liang zhan. (Not far, only two stops.) A: Di tie zhan zai nar? (Where is the subway station?) B: Yi zhi zou, zai di er ge lu kou xiang zuo guai. (Go straight, turn left at the second intersection.) A: Duo chang shi jian neng dao? (How long does it take to get there?) B: Da gai shi fen zhong. (About 10 minutes.) A: Xie xie ni! (Thank you!) B: Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)

Dialogue 8: At the Hotel

A: Ni hao! Wo xiang ding yi ge fang jian. (Hello! I'd like to book a room.) B: Hao de. Nin yao dan ren jian hai shi shuang ren jian? (Okay. Do you want a single or double room?) A: Shuang ren jian. (Double room.) B: Zhu ji tian? (How many days will you stay?) A: San tian. (Three days.) B: San tian de hua shi liu bai kuai. (For three days it's 600 yuan.) A: Bao kuo zao can ma? (Does it include breakfast?) B: Dui, bao kuo zao can. (Yes, breakfast is included.) A: Hao de. Wo ding le. (Okay. I'll take it.) B: Qing gei wo kan yi xia nin de shen fen zheng. (Please let me see your ID.) A: Gei ni. (Here you are.) B: Hao de. Zhe shi nin de fang jian yao shi. (Okay. Here's your room key.)

12.5 Restaurant Conversations

Dialogue 9: Ordering Food

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ji wei? (Welcome! How many people?) B: Liang wei. (Two people.) A: Hao de, qing zhe bian zou. (Okay, this way please.) B: Xie xie. Wo men kan yi xia cai dan. (Thank you. Let's look at the menu.) A: Hao de. Xiang he dian shen me? (Okay. What would you like to drink?) B: Liang bei cha. (Two cups of tea.) A: Hao de. Zhun bei hao dian cai le ma? (Okay. Ready to order?) B: Lai yi ge

gong bao ji ding, yi ge ma po dou fu. (We'll have kung pao chicken and mapo tofu.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Zai lai yi wan fan. (Also a bowl of rice.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) [After eating] B: Mai dan! (Check please!) A: Yi gong ba shi kuai. (80 yuan in total.) B: Ke yi shua ka ma? (Can I pay by card?) A: Ke yi de. (Yes, you can.)

Dialogue 10: At a Fast Food Restaurant

A: Huan ying guang lin! Nin yao dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to order?) B: Wo yao yi ge han bao bao, yi fen shu tiao. (I want a hamburger and French fries.) A: Hao de. Yao shen me yin liao? (Okay. What drink?) B: Yi bei ke le. (A cola.) A: Yao da bei hai shi xiao bei? (Large or small?) B: Zhong bei. (Medium.) A: Zai zhe li chi hai shi dai zou? (Eat here or take away?) B: Zai zhe li chi. (Eat here.) A: Hao de. Yi gong san shi er kuai. (Okay. 32 yuan in total.) B: Gei ni. (Here you are.) A: Zhao nin ba kuai. Qing na hao xiao piao. (Your change is 8 yuan. Please keep your receipt.)

12.6 At Work/School

Dialogue 11: Talking with Colleagues

A: Zao shang hao! (Good morning!) B: Zao! Zuo wan shui de hao ma? (Morning! Did you sleep well last night?) A: Bu tai hao. Jia ban dao hen wan. (Not very well. Worked overtime until late.) B: Tai xin ku le! Jin tian mang ma? (That's tough! Are you busy today?) A: Hai hao. Zhong wu yi qi chi fan ma? (Not too bad. Shall we have lunch together at noon?) B: Hao a! Ji dian qu? (Sure! What time?) A: Shi er dian ban zen me yang? (How about 12:30?) B: Mei wen ti. Na shi hou jian. (No problem. See you then.)

Dialogue 12: Student-Teacher Conversation

A: Lao shi, wo you yi ge wen ti. (Teacher, I have a question.)

B: Hao de, shen me wen ti? (Okay, what question?) A: Wo bu dong zhe ge zi zen me xie. (I don't understand how to write this character.) B: Rang wo kan kan. Zhe ge zi shi zhe yang xie de. (Let me see. This character is written like this.) A: Wo ming bai le. Xie xie lao shi! (I understand now. Thank you, teacher!) B: Bu ke qi. Hai you bie de wen ti ma? (You're welcome. Any other questions?) A: Mei you le. (No more.) B: Hao de. Ni yao duo lian xi. (Okay. You need to practice more.) A: Wo hui de. (I will.)

Part 13: Cultural Notes and Expressions

13.1 Chinese Idioms and Sayings (Chengyu)

Common Four-Character Idioms:

1. **yi ju liang de** (一举两得) - yi ju liang de Meaning: Kill two birds with one stone Example: Zhe yang zuo ke yi yi ju liang de. (Doing this can kill two birds with one stone.)
2. **ban tu er fei** (半途而废) - ban tu er fei Meaning: Give up halfway Example: Wo men bu neng ban tu er fei. (We cannot give up halfway.)
3. **shui luo shi chu** (水落石出) - shui luo shi chu Meaning: The truth comes out (literally: water recedes, stones appear) Example: Zhen xiang zong hui shui luo shi chu. (The truth will eventually come out.)
4. **yi xin yi yi** (一心一意) - yi xin yi yi Meaning: Wholeheartedly, with single-minded devotion Example: Ta yi xin yi yi de xue xi. (He/she studies wholeheartedly.)
5. **san xin er yi** (三心二意) - san xin er yi Meaning: Half-hearted, of two minds Example: Bu yao san xin er yi. (Don't be half-hearted.)
6. **xin kou ru yi** (心口如一) - xin kou ru yi Meaning: Say what

one thinks (literally: heart and mouth as one) Example: Ta shi ge xin kou ru yi de ren. (He/she is a person who says what they think.)

7. **yi yan jiu ding** (一言九鼎) - yi yan jiu ding Meaning: A word carries weight (literally: one word, nine cauldrons) Example: Ta shuo hua yi yan jiu ding. (His/her word carries great weight.)
8. **hua long dian jing** (画龙点睛) - hua long dian jing Meaning: Add the finishing touch Example: Zhe ju hua qi dao hua long dian jing de zuo yong. (This sentence adds the finishing touch.)
9. **sai weng shi ma** (塞翁失马) - sai weng shi ma Meaning: A blessing in disguise Example: Sai weng shi ma, yan zhi fei fu. (Losing the horse - who knows if it's a blessing or curse.)
10. **bu gong zi po** (不攻自破) - bu gong zi po Meaning: Collapse without being attacked (of a false argument) Example: Zhe ge shuo fa bu gong zi po. (This argument collapses on its own.)

13.2 Common Proverbs

1. **Shi jian jiu shi jin qian.** (时间就是金钱。) Time is money.
2. **Shi jian bu deng ren.** (时间不等人。) Time waits for no one.
3. **Shui jiao zao qi shen ti hao.** (睡觉早起身体好。) Early to bed and early to rise makes one healthy.
4. **Hao hao xue xi, tian tian xiang shang.** (好好学习，天天向上。) Study well and make progress every day.
5. **Yi fen geng yun, yi fen shou huo.** (一分耕耘，一分收获。) You reap what you sow.
6. **Shi bai shi cheng gong zhi mu.** (失败是成功之母。) Failure is the mother of success.

7. **Lao shi shi fu mu.** (老师是父母。) Teachers are like parents.
8. **You peng zi yuan fang lai, bu yi le hu?** (有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎？) Isn't it delightful to have friends come from afar?
9. **Tiao zao de niao er you chong chi.** (早起的鸟儿有虫吃。) The early bird catches the worm.
10. **Yi ge hao han san ge bang.** (一个好汉三个帮。) Even a hero needs help from others.

13.3 Festive Greetings

Chinese New Year:

- Xin nian kuai le! (新年快乐！) - Happy New Year!
- Gong xi fa cai! (恭喜发财！) - Wishing you prosperity!
- Wan shi ru yi! (万事如意！) - May all your wishes come true!
- Shen ti jian kang! (身体健康！) - Good health!

Other Holidays:

- Sheng dan kuai le! (圣诞快乐！) - Merry Christmas!
- Sheng ri kuai le! (生日快乐！) - Happy Birthday!
- Jie ri kuai le! (节日快乐！) - Happy Holidays!
- Zhong qiu jie kuai le! (中秋节快乐！) - Happy Mid-Autumn Festival!

13.4 Terms of Address

Family Terms:

- Baba/Die (爸爸/爹) - Father, Dad
- Mama/Niang (妈妈/娘) - Mother, Mom
- Gege (哥哥) - Older brother
- Jiejie (姐姐) - Older sister
- Didi (弟弟) - Younger brother

- Meimei (妹妹) - Younger sister
- Yeye (爷爷) - Paternal grandfather
- Nainai (奶奶) - Paternal grandmother
- Waigong (外公) - Maternal grandfather
- Waipo (外婆) - Maternal grandmother

Respectful Terms:

- Xiansheng (先生) - Mr., Sir, gentleman
- Nüshi/Xiaojie (女士/小姐) - Ms., Miss, lady
- Laoshi (老师) - Teacher (also used respectfully)
- Shifu (师傅) - Master (for skilled workers)
- Tongzhi (同志) - Comrade (less common now)

Part 14: Practice Exercises and Examples

14.1 Fill in the Blank Exercises

Exercise Set 1: Basic Sentences

1. Wo ____ xuesheng. (I am a student.) [Answer: shi]
2. Ta hen ____. (She is very tall.) [Answer: gao]
3. Wo men ____ qu Beijing. (We want to go to Beijing.) [Answer: xiang]
4. Ni ____ shenme? (What do you like?) [Answer: xihuan]
5. Jintian ____ hen hao. (The weather is very good today.) [Answer: tianqi]
6. Wo ____ liang ge pengyou. (I have two friends.) [Answer: you]
7. Ta zai ____ shu. (He/she is reading a book.) [Answer: kan]
8. Zhe ____ wo de. (This is mine.) [Answer: shi]
9. Ni zhu zai ____? (Where do you live?) [Answer: nar]
10. Wo ____ Zhongwen. (I study Chinese.) [Answer: xue]

Exercise Set 2: Time Expressions

1. Jintian ____ ji? (What day is today?) [Answer: xingqi]
2. Xianzai ____ dian? (What time is it now?) [Answer: ji]
3. Wo ____ qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.) [Answer: liu dian]
4. ____ tian wo qu Beijing. (Yesterday I went to Beijing.) [Answer: Zuo]
5. ____ tian wo yao qu Shanghai. (Tomorrow I'm going to Shanghai.) [Answer: Ming]
6. Wo ____ xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I've studied Chinese for three years.) [Answer: yijing]
7. Ta ____ lai le. (He/she just came.) [Answer: gang]
8. Qing ____ deng. (Please wait a moment.) [Answer: shao]
9. Wo ____ chi fan le. (I already ate.) [Answer: yijing]
10. Ta ____ mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.) [Answer: hai]

14.2 Translation Exercises

English to Latinxua:

1. I like to drink tea. → Wo xihuan he cha.
2. He is my teacher. → Ta shi wo de laoshi.
3. Where is the library? → Tushuguan zai nar?
4. This book is very interesting. → Zhe ben shu hen youyisi.
5. Can you speak Chinese? → Ni hui shuo Zhongwen ma?
6. I want to buy a ticket. → Wo yao mai piao.
7. The weather is very cold today. → Jintian tianqi hen leng.
8. We are going to watch a movie. → Women qu kan dianying.
9. She has three cats. → Ta you san zhi mao.
10. How much does this cost? → Zhe ge duo shao qian?
11. I don't understand. → Wo bu dong.

12. Please speak slowly. → Qing shuo man yi dian.
13. What time do you get up? → Ni ji dian qi chuang?
14. I live in Beijing. → Wo zhu zai Beijing.
15. He is taller than me. → Ta bi wo gao.

Latinxua to English:

1. Wo yao yi bei kafei. → I want a cup of coffee.
2. Ta hen congming. → He/she is very smart.
3. Ni qu nar? → Where are you going?
4. Wo bu xihuan chi la de. → I don't like to eat spicy food.
5. Zhe shi wo de pengyou. → This is my friend.
6. Ni hui shuo Yingwen ma? → Can you speak English?
7. Wo mei tian zao shang liu dian qi chuang. → I get up at 6 AM every morning.
8. Ta zai xuexiao gongzuo. → He/she works at school.
9. Zhe ge tai gui le. → This is too expensive.
10. Women qu gongyuan ba! → Let's go to the park!
11. Ni you xiongdi jiemei ma? → Do you have siblings?
12. Wo bu hui youyong. → I don't know how to swim.
13. Jintian xingqi ji? → What day is today?
14. Ta zai zuo shenme? → What is he/she doing?
15. Wo yijing chi le. → I already ate.

14.3 Sentence Building Practice

Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

1. Wo (I) + chi (eat) + fan (rice) → Wo chi fan. (I eat rice.)
2. Ta (He/she) + kan (watch) + dianshi (TV) → Ta kan dianshi. (He/she watches TV.)
3. Women (We) + xue (study) + Yingwen (English) → Women xue Yingwen. (We study English.)
4. Nimen (You pl.) + he (drink) + cha (tea) → Nimen he cha. (You drink tea.)
5. Tamen (They) + mai (buy) + shu (books) → Tamen mai shu. (They buy books.)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

1. Tianqi (weather) + hen hao (very good) → Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge (this) + hen gui (very expensive) → Zhe ge hen gui. (This is very expensive.)
3. Ta (he/she) + hen piaoliang (very beautiful) → Ta hen piaoliang. (He/she is very beautiful.)
4. Wo (I) + hen lei (very tired) → Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
5. Fangzi (house) + hen da (very big) → Fangzi hen da. (The house is very big.)

Pattern: Question with "ma"

1. Ni shi xuesheng. → Ni shi xuesheng ma? (Are you a student?)
2. Ta xihuan kafei. → Ta xihuan kafei ma? (Does he/she like coffee?)
3. Ni qu Beijing. → Ni qu Beijing ma? (Are you going to Beijing?)
4. Tianqi hao. → Tianqi hao ma? (Is the weather good?)
5. Ni you shijian. → Ni you shijian ma? (Do you have time?)

14.4 Reading Comprehension Passages

Passage 1: Self-Introduction

Wo jiao Zhang Wei. Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Wo jin nian er shi wu sui. Wo shi yi ge laoshi. Wo zai yi suo xiao xue gongzuo. Wo hen xihuan wo de gongzuo. Wo you yi ge xing fu de jiating. Wo you yi ge qizi he yi ge nüer. Wo de qizi shi yisheng. Wo de nüer jin nian wu sui. Wo men zhu zai Beijing. Wo xihuan du shu he yundong. Wo mei tian zou bu shang ban. Zhou mo wo chang chang gen jiaren yi qi qu gongyuan.

Questions:

1. Zhang Wei zuo shenme gongzuo? (What is Zhang Wei's job?) - Ta shi laoshi. (He is a teacher.)
2. Ta ji sui? (How old is he?) - Ta er shi wu sui. (He is 25 years old.)
3. Ta de qizi zuo shenme? (What does his wife do?) - Ta de qizi shi yisheng. (His wife is a doctor.)
4. Ta men zhu zai nar? (Where do they live?) - Ta men zhu zai Beijing. (They live in Beijing.)
5. Ta xi huan zuo shenme? (What does he like to do?) - Ta xihuan du shu he yundong. (He likes reading and exercising.)

Passage 2: A Day at School

Jin tian shi xing qi yi. Wo zao shang qi dian qi chuang. Wo xi lian, shua ya, chi zao fan. Ba dian wo zou lu qu xue xiao. Wo de xue xiao li jia bu yuan. Zou lu zhi xu yao shi wu fen zhong. Jiu dian wo men kai shi shang ke. Shang wu wo you san jie ke: Zhong wen, shu xue he Ying wen. Zhong wu shi er dian wo zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. Xia wu wo you liang jie ke: li shi he ti yu. San dian ban wo xia ke. Ran hou wo qu tu shu guan du shu. Wu dian wo hui jia. Wan shang wo zuo zuo ye, kan yi hui dian shi. Shi dian wo shui jiao.

Questions:

1. Ta ji dian qi chuang? (What time does he/she get up?) - Ta qi dian qi chuang. (He/she gets up at 7 o'clock.)
2. Xue xiao li jia yuan ma? (Is school far from home?) - Bu yuan. (Not far.)
3. Shang wu you ji jie ke? (How many classes in the morning?) - You san jie ke. (There are three classes.)
4. Ta zai nar chi wu fan? (Where does he/she eat lunch?) - Ta zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. (He/she eats lunch in the school cafeteria.)
5. Ta ji dian shui jiao? (What time does he/she go to bed?) - Ta shi dian shui jiao. (He/she goes to bed at 10 o'clock.)

Part 15: Advanced Topics

15.1 Classical Chinese Influence

Latinxua, while designed as a modern romanization system, still represents the Chinese language which contains many classical elements. Many common expressions have classical origins:

Examples:

1. Jiu nian yi bie (久年一别) - Long time no see (literally: long years, one separation)
2. Ri yue ru suo (日月如梭) - Time flies (literally: sun and moon like shuttles)
3. Xue er shi xi (学而时习) - Learning and practicing regularly
4. You peng zi yuan fang lai (有朋自远方来) - Having friends come from afar

15.2 Regional Variations

While Latinxua was designed for Standard Mandarin, regional variations exist:

Beijing dialect features:

- More use of "r" sound (erhua)
- Example: nar (where) vs. nali

Southern variations:

- Less distinction between zh/ch/sh and z/c/s
- Different vocabulary choices

15.3 Formal vs. Informal Speech

Formal:

- Use of nin (您) instead of ni (你)

- More complete sentence structures
- Polite particles and expressions

Informal:

- Shortened forms
- Colloquial expressions
- Casual particles

Examples: Formal: Qing wen, nin gui xing? (May I ask your honored surname?) Informal: Ni jiao shenme mingzi? (What's your name?)

15.4 Written vs. Spoken Differences

Written Style:

- More formal vocabulary
- Complete grammatical structures
- Classical influences

Spoken Style:

- Colloquialisms
- Shortened forms
- Repetition for emphasis

15.5 Common Mistakes and Corrections

Mistake 1: Using "shi" with adjectives Wrong: Ta shi gao. Correct: Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)

Mistake 2: Forgetting measure words Wrong: Wo you san shu. Correct: Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)

Mistake 3: Wrong word order with time expressions Wrong: Wo qu jintian Beijing. Correct: Wo jintian qu Beijing. (I'm going to Beijing today.)

Mistake 4: Confusing "hen" and "shi" Wrong: Zhe shi hen hao. Correct: Zhe hen hao. OR Zhe shi hao de. (This is good.)

Mistake 5: Using "de" incorrectly Wrong: Wo de shi xuesheng. Correct: Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)

Part 16: Reference Tables

16.1 Measure Word Quick Reference

Measure Word	Used For	Examples
ge	general items, people	yi ge ren (one person)
ben	books, magazines	liang ben shu (two books)
zhang	flat objects	san zhang zhi (three sheets of paper)
tiao	long objects	si tiao yu (four fish)
zhi	animals, some objects	wu zhi mao (five cats)
ba	objects with handles	liu ba yizi (six chairs)
jian	clothes, matters	qi jian yifu (seven pieces of clothing)
liang	vehicles	ba liang che (eight cars)
bei	cups, glasses	jiu bei shui (nine glasses of water)
ping	bottles	shi ping pijiu (ten bottles of beer)

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system

that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [p^h] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [t^h] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [k^h] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"
- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)
5. Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo de shu. (My book.)
2. Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3. Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4. Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5. Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6. Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7. Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8. Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9. Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10. Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10. Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)

- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3. Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4. Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5. Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study Chinese?)
6. Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7. Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8. Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9. Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10. Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1. Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2. Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3. Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4. Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)

5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1. Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2. Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3. Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4. Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5. Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)

6.Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9.Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10.Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)

- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)
10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)

- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)
8. Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9. Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10. Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11. Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12. Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13. Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14. Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15. Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1. Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2. Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3. Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4. Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5. Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6. Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7. Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8. Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)
9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the

wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)
8. Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9. Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10. Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1. Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2. Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3. Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4. Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5. Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)

6.Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7.Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8.Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9.Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10.Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11.Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12.Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13.Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14.Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15.Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1.Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2.Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3.Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4.Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5.Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6.Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)

7.Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8.Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9.Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10.Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11.Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12.Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13.Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14.Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15.Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1.Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2.Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3.Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4.Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5.Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6.Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7.Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8.Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9.Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10.Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11.Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12.Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13.Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)

14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)

- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)
- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)

- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)
- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)

- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)

- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)
- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)
- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)

- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)

- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)
- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)

- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)
4. Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5. Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1. Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2. Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3. Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4. Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5. Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)
- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)

- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)
- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)

- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)
- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)

- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than

me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)

- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)

- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)
- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)
- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10. Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1. Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2. Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)

3. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4. Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5. Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1. Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)
2. Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3. Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4. Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5. Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1. Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)

3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the

police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)
3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite

- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)
- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)
9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)

- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)

5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)
- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather

wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)
4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)
5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)
3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't

go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll go see you.)
8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)
4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see

the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)
10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)
6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)
4. Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5. Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6. Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7. Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8. Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9. Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10. Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11. Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12. Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)
13. Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14. Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15. Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2. Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by

him/her.)
3. Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7. Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8. Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9. Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10. Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11. Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)
3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)

7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)
15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)

9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)
4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)
7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)
4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)

5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)

- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)
- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)
- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)
- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)
- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)
- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)
- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)
- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)
- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)
- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)

- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)
- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)
- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)
- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)

- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)
- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)
- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)
- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)

- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)
- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)
- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)
- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)

- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)
- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)
- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)

- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)
- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)
- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)
- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)

- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)
- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)
- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)

- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)
- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)
- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)

- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)
- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)
- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)

- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)
- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)

- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter)

Transportation Infrastructure:

- lu (road)
- jie (street)
- gao su gong lu (highway, expressway)
- qiao (bridge)
- sui dao (tunnel)
- che zhan (station)
- huo che zhan (train station)
- gong gong qi che zhan (bus station)
- ji chang (airport)
- gang kou (port, harbor)
- ma tou (dock, wharf)
- jia you zhan (gas station)
- ting che chang (parking lot)
- hong lu deng (traffic light)
- ban ma xian (zebra crossing, crosswalk)

10.8 Buildings and Places

Housing:

- fangzi (house)
- gong yu (apartment)
- bie shu (villa)
- su she (dormitory)
- lü guan (hotel, inn)
- fan dian (hotel, restaurant)

Rooms:

- fangjian (room)
- ke ting (living room)
- wo shi (bedroom)
- chu fang (kitchen)
- can ting (dining room)
- yu shi (bathroom)
- ce suo (toilet, restroom)
- shu fang (study)
- che ku (garage)
- yang tai (balcony)
- yuan zi (yard, courtyard)
- hua yuan (garden)
- wu ding (rooftop)
- di xia shi (basement)

Public Places:

- shangdian (store, shop)
- shang chang (shopping mall)
- chao shi (supermarket)
- shi chang (market)
- yin hang (bank)
- you ju (post office)
- yi yuan (hospital)
- zhen suo (clinic)
- yao dian (pharmacy)
- tu shu guan (library)
- xue xiao (school)
- you er yuan (kindergarten)
- xiao xue (elementary school)
- zhong xue (middle/high school)
- da xue (university)
- gong si (company)

- ban gong shi (office)
- gong chang (factory)
- can guan/fan dian (restaurant)
- ka fei dian (coffee shop)
- cha guan (tea house)
- jiu ba (bar, pub)
- jiu dian (hotel)
- dian ying yuan (cinema, movie theater)
- ju chang (theater)
- bo wu guan (museum)
- mei shu guan (art museum/gallery)
- gong yuan (park)
- dong wu yuan (zoo)
- you le chang (amusement park)
- ti yu guan (stadium, gymnasium)
- you yong chi (swimming pool)
- jiao tang (church)
- si miao (temple)
- qing zhen si (mosque)

City Features:

- cheng shi (city)
- xiang cun (countryside, village)
- shi zhong xin (city center, downtown)
- jie dao (street)
- guang chang (square, plaza)
- gong she (park)
- hu tai yuan (botanical garden)

10.9 Technology and Modern Life

Electronics:

- dian nao (computer)

- bi ji ben dian nao (laptop)
- ping ban dian nao (tablet)
- shou ji (mobile phone)
- zhi neng shou ji (smartphone)
- dian hua (telephone)
- dian shi (television)
- shou yin ji (radio)
- zhao xiang ji (camera)
- lu xiang ji (video camera)
- xiang ji (camera)
- shu ma xiang ji (digital camera)
- ji pan (keyboard)
- shu biao (mouse)
- yin xiang (speaker)
- er ji (headphones)
- mai ke feng (microphone)
- da yin ji (printer)
- sao miao yi (scanner)
- U pan (USB drive)

Internet and Communication:

- hu lian wang/wang lu (internet)
- dian zi you jian (email)
- wang zhan (website)
- wang ye (webpage)
- liu lan qi (browser)
- sou suo yin qing (search engine)
- she jiao mei ti (social media)
- wei xin (WeChat)
- duan xin (text message, SMS)
- shi pin tong hua (video call)
- xu ni xian shi (virtual reality)

Appliances:

- bing xiang (refrigerator)
- xi yi ji (washing machine)
- hong gan ji (dryer)
- wei bo lu (microwave oven)
- kao xiang (oven)
- dian fan (electric fan)
- kong tiao (air conditioner)
- nuan qi (heater)
- chui feng ji (hair dryer)
- dian dong ya shua (electric toothbrush)
- xi chen qi (vacuum cleaner)

10.10 Colors and Descriptions

Colors:

- yan se (color)
- hong se (red)
- huang se (yellow)
- lan se (blue)
- lü se (green)
- hei se (black)
- bai se (white)
- hui se (gray)
- fen hong se (pink)
- cheng se (orange)
- zi se (purple)
- zong se (brown)
- jin se (gold)
- yin se (silver)
- shen (dark, deep)
- qian (light, pale)

- xian yan (bright, vivid)
- an (dark, dim)

Patterns and Textures:

- hua wen (pattern)
- tiao wen (stripe)
- bo dian (polka dot)
- hua (floral pattern)
- guang hua (smooth)
- cu cao (rough)
- ruan (soft)
- ying (hard)

10.11 Emotions and Feelings

Positive Emotions:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuai le (joyful, happy)
- xing fu (blessed, happy)
- man yi (satisfied)
- gan dong (moved, touched)
- ji dong (excited)
- xing fen (excited, thrilled)
- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- man zu (satisfied)
- gan ji (grateful)
- zi hao (proud)
- zi xin (confident)
- xi wang (hope)
- le guan (optimistic)
- ping jing (calm, peaceful)
- qing song (relaxed)

- shu fu (comfortable)

Negative Emotions:

- nan guo (sad)
- shang xin (sad, heartbroken)
- ku (cry, weep)
- sheng qi (angry)
- fen nu (furious, angry)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- kong ju (fearful, terrified)
- jin zhang (nervous, tense)
- dan xin (worried)
- jiao lü (anxious)
- ya li (pressure, stress)
- lei (tired)
- pi lao (exhausted, fatigued)
- wu liao (bored)
- ji mo (lonely)
- gu du (solitary, lonely)
- ju sang (disappointed)
- hou hui (regret)
- chou hen (hate)
- ji du (jealous)
- kun huo (confused, puzzled)
- shang xin (upset, sad)

10.12 Activities and Hobbies

Sports:

- yun dong (sport, exercise)
- ti yu (physical education, sports)
- zu qiu (soccer, football)
- lan qiu (basketball)

- wang qiu (tennis)
- ping pang qiu (table tennis)
- pai qiu (volleyball)
- bang qiu (baseball)
- gan lan qiu (rugby, American football)
- yu mao qiu (badminton)
- gao er fu qiu (golf)
- bing qiu (ice hockey)
- hua bing (ice skating)
- hua xue (skiing)
- you yong (swimming)
- tiao shui (diving)
- pao bu (running, jogging)
- qi zi xing che (cycling)
- deng shan (mountain climbing, hiking)
- yu jia (yoga)
- wu shu (martial arts)
- tai ji quan (Tai Chi)
- quan ji (boxing)
- shai ma (horseback riding)

Hobbies:

- ai hao (hobby)
- du shu (reading)
- xie zuo (writing)
- hua hua (painting, drawing)
- she ying (photography)
- yin yue (music)
- chang ge (singing)
- tiao wu (dancing)
- tan gang qin (playing piano)
- tan ji ta (playing guitar)

- la xiao ti qin (playing violin)
- chui chang di (playing flute)
- ting yin yue (listening to music)
- kan dian ying (watching movies)
- kan dian shi (watching television)
- wan you xi (playing games)
- dian zi you xi (video games)
- peng ren (cooking)
- hong bei (baking)
- yuan yi (gardening)
- shou ji (collecting)
- lü you (traveling)
- ye ying (camping)
- diao yu (fishing)
- qi yi (playing chess)
- ma jiang (mahjong)
- pu ke (poker)
- bian zhi (knitting)
- ci xiu (embroidery)

10.13 Education and Learning

School Subjects:

- ke mu (subject, course)
- zhong wen (Chinese language)
- ying wen (English)
- shu xue (mathematics)
- ke xue (science)
- wu li (physics)
- hua xue (chemistry)
- sheng wu (biology)
- li shi (history)
- di li (geography)

- zheng zhi (politics)
- jing ji (economics)
- yi shu (art)
- yin yue (music)
- ti yu (physical education)
- dian nao (computer science)
- wen xue (literature)
- zhe xue (philosophy)
- xin li xue (psychology)
- she hui xue (sociology)
- fa lü (law)
- yi xue (medicine)
- gong cheng (engineering)
- shang ye (business)

School Items:

- shu (book)
- ke ben (textbook)
- bi ji ben (notebook)
- bi (pen)
- qian bi (pencil)
- gang bi (fountain pen)
- yuan zhu bi (ballpoint pen)
- xiang pi (eraser)
- chi (ruler)
- jiao shui (glue)
- jian dao (scissors)
- ding shu ji (stapler)
- jie shu qi (pencil sharpener)
- ji suan qi (calculator)
- zi dian (dictionary)
- di tu (map)

- bei bao (backpack)
- qian bi he (pencil case)
- zhi (paper)

Learning Activities:

- xue xi (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- du (read)
- xie (write)
- ting (listen)
- shuo (speak)
- lian xi (practice, exercise)
- fu xi (review)
- yu xi (preview)
- ji (remember, memorize)
- li jie (understand)
- si kao (think)
- yan jiu (research)
- kao shi (exam, test)
- zuo ye (homework)
- wen ti (question, problem)
- da an (answer)
- fen shu (score, grade)
- cheng ji (grade, achievement)
- bi ye (graduate)
- xue wei (degree)

10.14 Health and Medical Terms

Body Conditions:

- jian kang (healthy)
- sheng bing (to be sick)
- bing (illness, disease)

- teng (pain, ache)
- tou teng (headache)
- ya teng (toothache)
- du zi teng (stomachache)
- fa shao (fever)
- ke sou (cough)
- gan mao (cold, flu)
- liu gan (influenza)
- la du zi (diarrhea)
- ou tu (vomit)
- guo min (allergy)
- shang kou (wound, injury)
- gu zhe (bone fracture)
- shao shang (burn)
- liu xue (bleeding)

Medical Treatment:

- kan bing (see a doctor)
- zhen duan (diagnose)
- zhi liao (treat, treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- zhong yao (Chinese medicine)
- xi yao (Western medicine)
- yao pian (pill, tablet)
- yao shui (liquid medicine)
- da zhen (injection, shot)
- shou shu (surgery, operation)
- jian cha (examination, checkup)
- X guang (X-ray)
- hua yan (blood test)
- ti wen (body temperature)
- xue ya (blood pressure)

- chu fang (prescription)
- bang dai (bandage)
- gao yao (ointment)

Medical Specialists:

- yi sheng (doctor)
- hu shi (nurse)
- wai ke yi sheng (surgeon)
- nei ke yi sheng (physician)
- ya yi (dentist)
- yan ke yi sheng (ophthalmologist)
- er bi hou ke yi sheng (ENT doctor)
- pi fu ke yi sheng (dermatologist)
- er ke yi sheng (pediatrician)
- jing shen ke yi sheng (psychiatrist)

10.15 Money and Shopping

Money:

- qian (money)
- yuan (yuan, Chinese currency unit)
- kuai (colloquial for yuan)
- mao/jiao (10 cents)
- fen (cent)
- ying bi (coin)
- zhi bi (paper money, bill)
- xin yong ka (credit card)
- chu xu ka (debit card)
- xian jin (cash)
- yin hang ka (bank card)
- jia ge (price)
- duo shao qian (how much money)

Shopping:

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell)
- gou wu (shopping)
- gu ke (customer)
- shou huo yuan (salesperson)
- fu qian (pay money)
- zhao qian (give change)
- gui (expensive)
- pian yi (cheap)
- zhe kou (discount)
- da zhe (on sale, discount)
- mian fei (free of charge)
- shou ju (receipt)
- tui huo (return goods)
- huan huo (exchange goods)
- shi chuan (try on clothes)
- bao zhuang (packaging, wrap)
- song huo (delivery)

10.16 Common Verbs - Extended List

Motion Verbs:

- zou (walk, go, leave)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- fei (fly)
- you (swim)
- pa (climb, crawl)
- gun (roll)
- hua (slide)
- kai (drive)
- qi (ride)
- zuo (sit, take [transport])

Action Verbs:

- zuo (do, make)
- gong zuo (work)
- xiu xi (rest)
- shui jiao (sleep)
- qi chuang (get up)
- xi zao (take a bath)
- xi lian (wash face)
- shua ya (brush teeth)
- ti tou (comb hair)
- chuan (wear, put on)
- tuo (take off)
- kai (open, start)
- guan (close, turn off)
- da kai (open)
- guan shang (close)
- na (take, hold)
- fang (put, place)
- song (send, give as gift)
- jie (receive, borrow)
- jie (lend)
- huan (return, give back)
- wen (ask)
- da (answer, reply)
- gao su (tell, inform)
- wen (smell)
- ting (listen)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- kan jian (see, catch sight of)
- ting jian (hear)
- peng (touch)
- mo (touch, feel)

Communication Verbs:

- shuo (speak, say)
- shuo hua (speak, talk)
- jiang (speak, tell)
- tan (chat, talk)
- jiao (call, be named)
- wen (ask)
- hui da (answer, reply)
- jie shi (explain)
- miao shu (describe)
- tao lun (discuss)
- zheng lun (argue, debate)
- da dian hua (make a phone call)
- fa duan xin (send text message)
- fa you jian (send email)

Mental Verbs:

- xiang (think, want)
- si kao (think, ponder)
- ji de (remember)
- wang ji (forget)
- zhi dao (know)
- ren shi (know [people], recognize)
- dong (understand)
- ming bai (understand, realize)
- xiang xin (believe)
- huai yi (doubt)
- xi wang (hope)
- qi dai (expect, look forward to)
- jue de (feel, think)

Emotion Verbs:

- ai (love)

- xi huan (like)
- tao yan (dislike, hate)
- hai pa (be afraid)
- dan xin (worry)
- gao xing (be happy)
- shang xin (be sad)
- sheng qi (be angry)
- xiao (laugh, smile)
- ku (cry)

Part 11: Sentence Patterns and Expressions

11.1 Greetings and Polite Expressions

Greetings:

1. Ni hao! (Hello!)
2. Nin hao! (Hello! - formal)
3. Da jia hao! (Hello everyone!)
4. Zao shang hao! (Good morning!)
5. Wan shang hao! (Good evening!)
6. Wan an! (Good night!)
7. Ni hao ma? (How are you?)
8. Ni zui jin zen me yang? (How have you been lately?)
9. Hen jiu bu jian! (Long time no see!)
10. Huan ying! (Welcome!)

Farewells:

1. Zai jian! (Goodbye!)
2. Ming tian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
3. Hui tou jian! (See you later!)
4. Yi hui jian! (See you in a bit!)
5. Wan an! (Good night!)
6. Bai bai! (Bye bye!)

7.Zou hao! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
8.Man zou! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
9.Yi lu ping an! (Have a safe journey!)
10.Bao zhong! (Take care of yourself!)

Polite Expressions:

1.Xie xie! (Thank you!)
2.Duo xie! (Thank you very much!)
3.Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)
4.Bu yong xie! (No need to thank!)
5.Mei guan xi! (It's okay! / No problem!)
6.Dui bu qi! (Sorry! / Excuse me!)
7.Mei shi! (It's nothing! / No problem!)
8.Qing! (Please!)
9.Qing wen! (Excuse me, may I ask...)
10.Ma fan ni le! (Sorry to trouble you!)
11.Bu hao yi si! (Sorry! / Embarrassed!)
12.Zhen bao qian! (I'm really sorry!)
13.Qing yuan liang! (Please forgive me!)
14.Mei you guan xi! (It doesn't matter!)
15.Zhu ni hao yun! (Good luck!)

Making Requests:

1.Qing bang mang! (Please help!)
2.Ke yi bang wo ma? (Can you help me?)
3.Qing gei wo... (Please give me...)
4.Wo xiang yao... (I would like...)
5.Ke yi ma? (Is it okay? / May I?)
6.Qing shao deng! (Please wait a moment!)
7.Qing zai shuo yi bian! (Please say it again!)
8.Qing shuo man yi dian! (Please speak slower!)
9.Qing wen... (May I ask... / Excuse me...)
10.Neng bu neng...? (Can you...?)

11.2 Common Question Patterns

What Questions:

1. Zhe shi shen me? (What is this?)
2. Ni zai zuo shen me? (What are you doing?)
3. Ni xiang chi shen me? (What do you want to eat?)
4. Ni de ming zi shi shen me? (What is your name?)
5. Ni de gong zuo shi shen me? (What is your job?)
6. Zhe ge zen me shuo? (How do you say this?)
7. Shen me yi si? (What does it mean?)
8. Fa sheng le shen me shi? (What happened?)
9. Ni you shen me wen ti? (What questions do you have?)
10. Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Who Questions:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Ta shi shei? (Who is he/she?)
3. Shei zai nar? (Who is there?)
4. Shei de? (Whose is it?)
5. Ni zhao shei? (Who are you looking for?)
6. Shei lai le? (Who came?)
7. Shei zhi dao? (Who knows?)
8. Shei xiang qu? (Who wants to go?)
9. Ni gen shei qu? (Who are you going with?)
10. Shei jiao ni de? (Who taught you?)

Where Questions:

1. Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
2. Ni qu nar? (Where are you going?)
3. Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
4. Ce suo zai nar? (Where is the bathroom?)
5. Zhe ge zai nar mai? (Where can I buy this?)
6. Ni cong nar lai? (Where are you from?)
7. Ni de shu zai nar? (Where is your book?)
8. Wo men zai nar jian mian? (Where shall we meet?)
9. Ta qu nar le? (Where did he/she go?)

10.Ni xiang qu nar? (Where do you want to go?)

When Questions:

1.Shen me shi hou? (When?)
2.Ji dian? (What time?)
3.Ji yue? (What month?)
4.Ji hao? (What date?)
5.Xing qi ji? (What day of the week?)
6.Ni shen me shi hou lai? (When will you come?)
7.Ni ji dian qi chuang? (What time do you get up?)
8.Ni shen me shi hou you kong? (When are you free?)
9.Huo che ji dian kai? (What time does the train leave?)
10.Ni shen me shi hou chu sheng? (When were you born?)

How Questions:

1.Zen me yang? (How is it? / How about it?)
2.Zen me qu? (How to go?)
3.Zen me zuo? (How to do it?)
4.Zen me shuo? (How to say it?)
5.Zen me hui shi? (What's going on? / How come?)
6.Ni zen me le? (What's wrong with you?)
7.Zen me ban? (What to do?)
8.Zhe ge zen me yong? (How to use this?)
9.Zen me zou? (How to get there?)
10.Ni jue de zen me yang? (What do you think? / How do you feel about it?)

Why Questions:

1.Wei shen me? (Why?)
2.Ni wei shen me bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
3.Wei shen me bu xing? (Why not?)
4.Ta wei shen me sheng qi? (Why is he/she angry?)
5.Ni wei shen me zhe me wan? (Why are you so late?)
6.Wei shen me bu ke yi? (Why can't [we/I]?)
7.Ni wei shen me bu chi? (Why don't you eat?)

8. Wei shen me yao zhe yang? (Why must it be this way?)
9. Ta wei shen me ku? (Why is he/she crying?)
10. Wei shen me mei you ren? (Why is there no one?)

How Many/Much Questions:

1. Duo shao? (How many? / How much?)
2. Ji ge? (How many?)
3. Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
4. Ni you ji ge xiong di jie mei? (How many siblings do you have?)
5. Ni duo da? / Ni ji sui? (How old are you?)
6. Duo yuan? (How far?)
7. Duo jiu? (How long [time]?)
8. Duo chang? (How long [length]?)
9. Ni you duo gao? (How tall are you?)
10. Duo zhong? (How heavy?)

11.3 Making Suggestions and Offers

Suggestions:

1. Women qu kan dian ying ba! (Let's go watch a movie!)
2. Zhe yang hao bu hao? (How about this?)
3. Ni kan zen me yang? (What do you think?)
4. Wo jian yi... (I suggest...)
5. Ni jue de... zen me yang? (What do you think about...?)
6. Bu ru... (How about...? / Why don't we...?)
7. Women ke yi... (We can...)
8. Yao bu yao...? (Do you want to...?)
9. Women zou ba! (Let's go!)
10. Hao bu hao? (Is that okay? / Okay?)

Offers:

1. Wo lai bang ni! (Let me help you!)
2. Wo qing ni! (My treat! / It's on me!)
3. Yao bu yao wo bang ni? (Do you want me to help you?)
4. Wo gei ni... (I'll give you... / Let me give you...)

5.Rang wo lai! (Let me do it!)
6.Wo song ni! (I'll give it to you! / I'll take you!)
7.Ni xiang bu xiang...? (Would you like to...?)
8.Wo neng wei ni zuo shen me? (What can I do for you?)
9.Wo lai fu qian! (Let me pay!)
10.Wo gei ni da dian hua! (I'll call you!)

11.4 Expressing Opinions and Preferences

Likes and Dislikes:

1.Wo xi huan... (I like...)
2.Wo hen xi huan... (I really like...)
3.Wo zui xi huan... (I like...the most / My favorite is...)
4.Wo ai... (I love...)
5.Wo bu xi huan... (I don't like...)
6.Wo tao yan... (I hate...)
7.Wo bu tai xi huan... (I don't really like...)
8.Wo dui...gan xing qu. (I'm interested in...)
9.Wo dui...mei xing qu. (I'm not interested in...)
10.Wo xi huan...duo yu... (I like...more than...)

Opinions:

1.Wo jue de... (I think... / I feel...)
2.Wo ren wei... (I believe... / In my opinion...)
3.Wo de yi jian shi... (My opinion is...)
4.Wo tong yi. (I agree.)
5.Wo bu tong yi. (I disagree.)
6.Ni shuo de dui. (You're right.)
7.Wo bu zhe me xiang. (I don't think so.)
8.Ke neng ba. (Maybe. / Perhaps.)
9.Dang ran! (Of course!)
10.Que shi shi zhe yang. (That's indeed the case.)
11.Wo bu que ding. (I'm not sure.)
12.Wo ye zhe me xiang. (I think so too.)
13.Ni jue de ne? (What do you think?)
14.Zhe shi hao zhu yi! (That's a good idea!)

15.Zhe bu shi hao ban fa. (This is not a good solution.)

11.5 Expressing Ability and Possibility

Ability:

1.Wo hui... (I can... / I know how to...)
2.Wo neng... (I can... / I'm able to...)
3.Wo ke yi... (I can... / I may...)
4.Wo bu hui... (I can't... / I don't know how to...)
5.Wo zuo de dao. (I can do it.)
6.Wo zuo bu dao. (I can't do it.)
7.Wo xue hui le. (I learned it / I know how now.)
8.Ta hen neng gan. (He/she is very capable.)
9.Wo you neng li. (I have the ability.)
10.Wo ban de dao. (I can manage it.)

Possibility:

1.Ke neng. (Possible. / Maybe.)
2.You ke neng. (It's possible.)
3.Mei ke neng. / Bu ke neng. (Impossible.)
4.Ye xu. (Perhaps.)
5.Hui...de. (Will... / Likely to...)
6.Bu hui...de. (Won't... / Unlikely to...)
7.Da gai. (Probably.)
8.Huo xu. (Perhaps. / Maybe.)
9.Shuo bu ding. (Hard to say. / Maybe.)
10.Nan shuo. (Hard to say.)

11.6 Expressing Needs and Wants

Wants:

1.Wo yao... (I want...)
2.Wo xiang... (I would like to...)
3.Wo xiang yao... (I want...)
4.Wo bu yao. (I don't want.)
5.Wo xi wang... (I hope...)

6.Wo qin dai... (I look forward to...)
7.Wo yuan yi... (I'm willing to... / I'd like to...)
8.Wo xiang mai... (I want to buy...)
9.Ni yao shen me? (What do you want?)
10.Ni xiang yao shen me? (What would you like?)

Needs:

1.Wo xu yao... (I need...)
2.Wo bi xu... (I must...)
3.Wo dei... (I have to... / I must...)
4.Wo ying gai... (I should...)
5.Wo yao... (I need to... / I have to...)
6.Wo bu bi... (I don't need to...)
7.Wo bu xu yao. (I don't need.)
8.Zhe shi bi yao de. (This is necessary.)
9.Wo xu yao bang zhu. (I need help.)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Part 12: Dialogue Examples

12.1 Meeting Someone

Dialogue 1: First Meeting

A: Ni hao! Wo jiao Li Ming. (Hello! My name is Li Ming.) B: Ni hao! Wo jiao Wang Hong. Hen gao xing ren shi ni. (Hello! My name is Wang Hong. Nice to meet you.) A: Wo ye hen gao xing ren shi ni. Ni shi na guo ren? (I'm also happy to meet you. What nationality are you?) B: Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Ni ne? (I'm Chinese. And you?) A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where

| ping | bottles | shi ping pijiu (ten bottles of beer) |

16.2 Time Expression Reference

Expression	Latinxua	Usage
now	xianzai	Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
today	jintian	Jintian hen re. (Today is very hot.)
yesterday	zuotian	Zuotian wo qu le Beijing. (Yesterday I went to Beijing.)
tomorrow	mingtian	Mingtian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
morning	zaoshang/ shangwu	Wo zaoshang liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 in the morning.)
afternoon	xiawu	Xiawu women you ke. (We have class in the afternoon.)
evening	wanshang	Wanshang wo zai jia. (In the evening I'm at home.)
last week	shang xingqi	Shang xingqi wo hen mang. (Last week I was very busy.)
next week	xia xingqi	Xia xingqi wo qu Shanghai. (Next week I'm going to Shanghai.)
last month	shang ge yue	Shang ge yue hen leng. (Last month was very cold.)
next month	xia ge yue	Xia ge yue shi wo de shengri. (Next month is my birthday.)
last year	qu nian	Qu nian wo zai Beijing. (Last year I was in Beijing.)
next year	ming nian	Ming nian wo bi ye. (Next year I graduate.)
this week	zhe ge xingqi	Zhe ge xingqi wo you kong. (This week I'm free.)
this month	zhe ge yue	Zhe ge yue hen mang. (This month is very busy.)
this	jin nian	Jin nian wo er shi sui. (This year I'm

Expression	Latinxua	Usage
year		20 years old.)

16.3 Question Word Summary

Question Word	Meaning	Example
shenme	what	Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
shei/shui	who	Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
nar/nali	where	Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
nage	which	Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
zenme	how	Zenme zou? (How to get there?)
zenmeyang	how, how about	Tianqi zenmeyang? (How's the weather?)
weishenme	why	Ni weishenme bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
ji	how many (< 10)	Ni you ji ge pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
duoshao	how many/much	Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
ji dian	what time	Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
ji yue	what month	Ni ji yue shengri? (What month is your birthday?)
ji hao	what date	Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
xingqi ji	what day	Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
duo da/ji sui	how old	Ni duo da? (How old are you?)

Question Word	Meaning	Example
duo yuan	how far	Li zheli duo yuan? (How far from here?)
duo chang	how long	Zhe tiao lu duo chang? (How long is this road?)
duo jiu	how long (time)	Ni xue le duo jiu? (How long have you studied?)

16.4 Common Verbs Conjugation Patterns

Basic Pattern: Verb + Aspect Marker + Complement

Tense/Aspect	Pattern	Example
Simple Present	Subject + Verb	Wo chi fan. (I eat.)
Progressive	Subject + zai + Verb	Wo zai chi fan. (I am eating.)
Completed	Subject + Verb + le	Wo chi le fan. (I ate / have eaten.)
Experience	Subject + Verb + guo	Wo chi guo. (I have eaten [before].)
Future	Subject + yao/hui/xiang + Verb	Wo yao chi fan. (I will eat / I want to eat.)
Negative	Subject + bu + Verb	Wo bu chi fan. (I don't eat.)
Negative Past	Subject + mei(you) + Verb	Wo mei chi fan. (I didn't eat.)
Can/Ability	Subject + hui/neng/keyi + Verb	Wo hui chi. (I can eat / know how to eat.)
Must	Subject + dei/bixu/yinggai +	Wo dei chi fan. (I must eat.)

Tense/Aspect	Pattern	Example
	Verb	

16.5 Sentence Pattern Quick Reference

Pattern Type	Structure	Example
Basic Statement	S + V + O	Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
Adjective	S + hen + Adj	Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
"To be"	S + shi + N	Wo shi laoshi. (I am a teacher.)
Yes/No Question	S + V + O + ma?	Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
Wh-Question	Question Word + ...	Ni jiao shenme mingzi? (What's your name?)
Negative	S + bu/mei + V	Wo bu qu. (I'm not going.)
Possession	S + you + O	Wo you shu. (I have books.)
Location	S + zai + Place	Ta zai jia. (He/she is at home.)
Comparison	A + bi + B + Adj	Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
As...as	A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adj	Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I'm as tall as him/her.)
Superlative	S + zui + Adj	Ta zui gao. (He/she is the tallest.)
Modal	S + Modal + V	Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
Progressive	S + zai + V	Wo zai xuexiao. (I am studying.)
Completed	S + V + le	Wo chi le. (I ate.)

Pattern Type	Structure	Example
Experience	S + V + guo	Wo qu guo Beijing. (I've been to Beijing.)
Ba construction	S + ba + O + V + C	Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
Bei construction	S + bei + (Agent) + V	Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
Existential	Place + you + O	Zhuozi shang you shu. (There's a book on the table.)

Part 17: Extended Vocabulary by Theme

17.1 Business and Work Vocabulary

Company Structure:

- gongsi (company)
- qiye (enterprise)
- gongchang (factory)
- bangongshi (office)
- bumen (department)
- zong jingli (general manager)
- jing li (manager)
- zhuyuan (assistant)
- mishu (secretary)
- yuangong (employee)
- tongshi (colleague)
- laobao (boss)
- gu zhu (employer)
- shangsi (superior)

- xiashu (subordinate)

Business Activities:

- gongzuo (work)
- huiyi (meeting)
- xiangmu (project)
- jihua (plan)
- baogao (report)
- hetong (contract)
- yewu (business)
- maimai (trade, business)
- tanpan (negotiate)
- hezuo (cooperate)
- jingzheng (compete)
- fazhan (develop)
- guanli (manage)
- xiaoshou (sell, sales)
- yingxiao (marketing)
- guanggao (advertisement)
- kehu (client, customer)
- shichang (market)
- jiage (price)
- lirun (profit)
- chengben (cost)
- touzi (invest)
- shouru (income)
- zhichu (expense)
- yusuan (budget)
- caizheng (finance)

Work Activities:

- shangban (go to work)
- xiabian (get off work)

- jiaban (work overtime)
- qingjia (ask for leave)
- cizhi (resign)
- tuixiu (retire)
- zhaoping (recruit)
- peixun (train)
- shengzhi (promote)
- jiangzhi (demote)
- jiangong (pay salary)
- gongzi (salary, wage)
- jiangjin (bonus)
- fuli (welfare, benefits)

Documents:

- wenjian (document)
- ziliao (material, data)
- hetong (contract)
- xieyi (agreement)
- zhangdan (bill)
- fapiao (receipt, invoice)
- baogao (report)
- jihua (plan)
- tong zhi (notice)
- beiwanglu (memorandum)

17.2 Government and Politics

Government Terms:

- zhengfu (government)
- guojia (nation, country)
- sheng (province)
- shi (city)
- xian (county)

- cun (village)
- shoudu (capital)
- zhongyang (central [government])
- difang (local)
- guanyuan (official)
- lingdao (leader)
- zongli (premier)
- buzhang (minister)
- shizhang (mayor)
- jingcha (police)
- junren (military personnel)
- falü (law)
- fagui (regulation)
- zhengce (policy)
- minzhu (democracy)
- ziyou (freedom)
- quanli (right)
- yiwu (duty, obligation)
- xuanju (election)
- toua piao (vote)

17.3 Technology Terms

Computer:

- diannao (computer)
- yingjian (hardware)
- ruanjian (software)
- chengxu (program)
- yingyong (application)
- wenjian (file)
- wenjianjia (folder)
- shubiao (mouse)
- jianpan (keyboard)

- xianshiqi (monitor)
- dayinji (printer)
- saomiaoyi (scanner)
- yingpan (hard drive)
- neicun (memory)
- chulqi (processor)

Internet:

- hulianwang/wanglu (internet)
- wangzhan (website)
- wangye (webpage)
- liulanqi (browser)
- sousuoyinqing (search engine)
- dianzi youjian (email)
- wangshang (online)
- xiazai (download)
- shangchuan (upload)
- lianjie (link)
- zhanghu (account)
- mima (password)
- denglou (log in)
- tuichu (log out)
- shejiaoméiti (social media)

Mobile:

- shouji (mobile phone)
- zhinen shouji (smartphone)
- yingyong chengxu/APP (app)
- ping mu (screen)
- chu moping (touchscreen)
- dianchi (battery)
- chongdian (charge)
- haoma (phone number)

- duanxin (text message)
- dianhua (phone call)
- tonghua (call)

17.4 Medical Vocabulary Extended

Symptoms:

- zhengzhuang (symptom)
- teng (pain, ache)
- fashao (fever)
- kesou (cough)
- dati (sneeze)
- liubi (runny nose)
- touyun (dizzy)
- exin (nausea)
- outu (vomit)
- ladu zi (diarrhea)
- bianmi (constipation)
- shiwang (loss of appetite)
- pilao (fatigue)
- shuibuzhao (insomnia)
- pi zhen (rash)
- zhong (swelling)
- chu xue (bleeding)

Diseases:

- jibing (disease)
- ganmao (cold)
- liugan (flu)
- fayan (inflammation)
- gan ran (infection)
- guomin (allergy)
- aizheng (cancer)

- tangniaobing (diabetes)
- gaoxueya (high blood pressure)
- xinzangbing (heart disease)
- feiyan (pneumonia)
- weyan (gastritis)
- toufeng (headache disorder)
- guanjiayan (arthritis)

Treatment:

- zhiliao (treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- yaopian (pill)
- yaoshui (liquid medicine)
- zhushe (injection)
- shoushu (surgery)
- jianchá (examination)
- zhenduan (diagnosis)
- chufang (prescription)
- liao cheng (course of treatment)
- xiuxi (rest)
- yinshi (diet)
- duanlian (exercise)

Medical Facilities:

- yiyuan (hospital)
- zhensuo (clinic)
- yaodian (pharmacy)
- jizhenshi (emergency room)
- shoushushi (operating room)
- bingfang (patient room)
- menzheng (outpatient)
- zhu yuan (hospitalization)

17.5 Legal Vocabulary

Law Terms:

- falü (law)
- fagui (regulation)
- tiaoli (statute)
- hetong (contract)
- xieyi (agreement)
- quanli (right)
- yiwu (obligation)
- zeren (responsibility)
- fa yuan (court)
- faguai (judge)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jiancha yuan (prosecutor)
- zhengju (evidence)
- zhengre (witness)
- beigao (defendant)
- yuangao (plaintiff)
- panjue (verdict, judgment)
- chengfa (punishment)
- fajin (fine)
- jianyu (prison)
- fanzui (crime)
- weifa (illegal)
- heffa (legal)
- qiangdao (rob)
- tou (steal)
- pian (deceive, cheat)
- sharen (murder)
- baolli (violence)

17.6 Environmental Vocabulary

Environment:

- huanjing (environment)
- ziran (nature)
- shengtai (ecology)
- wuran (pollution)
- kongqi (air)
- shui (water)
- turang (soil)
- sen lin (forest)
- ye sheng dongwu (wildlife)
- baohu (protect)
- huanbao (environmental protection)
- kechixu (sustainable)
- ziyuan (resource)
- nengyuan (energy)
- taiyangnen (solar energy)
- fengneng (wind energy)
- qingjienengyuan (clean energy)
- huashiran liao (fossil fuel)
- meitan (coal)
- shiyou (petroleum)
- tianranqi (natural gas)
- dianli (electricity)
- lasui (garbage, trash)
- huishou (recycle)
- jian shao (reduce)
- zaiyong (reuse)

Climate:

- qihou (climate)
- quanqiu biannuan (global warming)

- qihou bianhhua (climate change)
- wenshi qiti (greenhouse gas)
- eryanghutian (carbon dioxide)
- wen du (temperature)
- qiwen (air temperature)
- shuiwen (water temperature)
- hanwu (drought)
- hongshui (flood)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- dizhen (earthquake)
- haixiao (tsunami)
- shanlin huozai (forest fire)

17.7 Academic Subjects Extended

Natural Sciences:

- kexue (science)
- wuli (physics)
- huaxue (chemistry)
- shengwu (biology)
- tianwenxue (astronomy)
- diliuxue (geology)
- qixiangxue (meteorology)
- haiyang xue (oceanography)
- shengwu kexue (life sciences)
- huanjing kexue (environmental science)

Social Sciences:

- shehui kexue (social science)
- lishi (history)
- dili (geography)
- zhengzhixue (political science)
- jingjixue (economics)

- shehuixue (sociology)
- renleaxue (anthropology)
- xinlixue (psychology)
- jiaoyu xue (education)
- chuanboxue (communication studies)

Humanities:

- renwen (humanities)
- wenxue (literature)
- zhexue (philosophy)
- yuyanxue (linguistics)
- yishu (art)
- yinyue (music)
- xiju (drama)
- dianying (film)
- zongjiao (religion)
- kaoguxue (archaeology)

Professional Studies:

- yixue (medicine)
- falü (law)
- gongcheng (engineering)
- jianzhu (architecture)
- shangye (business)
- guanli (management)
- kuaiji (accounting)
- jisuanji kexue (computer science)
- xinxiji shu (information technology)
- nongyue (agriculture)

17.8 Sports and Fitness Extended

Team Sports:

- zuqiu (soccer/football)

- lanqiu (basketball)
- paiqiu (volleyball)
- bangqiu (baseball)
- ganlanqiu (rugby/American football)
- bingqiu (ice hockey)
- shou qiu (handball)
- shui qiu (water polo)

Individual Sports:

- youyong (swimming)
- tianshu (track and field)
- paobu (running)
- tiaoyuan (long jump)
- tiaogao (high jump)
- reng biaoqiang (javelin throw)
- tijian (shot put)
- matarsung (marathon)

Racket Sports:

- wangqiu (tennis)
- pingpangqiu (table tennis)
- yumao qiu (badminton)
- biqu (squash)

Water Sports:

- chonglong (surfing)
- fanzhuan (sailing)
- huaxue (water skiing)
- qian shui (diving)
- pifa ting (kayaking)

Winter Sports:

- huaxue (skiing)
- huabing (ice skating)

- xuequiao (snowboarding)
- binghu (curling)

Martial Arts:

- wushu (martial arts)
- taijiquan (Tai Chi)
- gongfu (kung fu)
- judao (judo)
- taiquandao (taekwondo)
- kongshoudao (karate)
- quanji (boxing)
- jiaodou (wrestling)

Fitness:

- jiansheng (fitness)
- jianmei (bodybuilding)
- ti cao (gymnastics)
- yujia (yoga)
- pula ti (Pilates)
- xin fei gongne (cardio)
- liliang xunlian (strength training)
- lashen (stretching)
- re shen (warm-up)
- fangsong (cool down)

17.9 Arts and Entertainment

Visual Arts:

- huahua (painting)
- sumo (drawing)
- diaoso (sculpture)
- sheyeng (photography)
- sheji (design)
- shuzishu (digital art)

- shufa (calligraphy)
- taoci (ceramics/pottery)
- banhua (printmaking)

Performing Arts:

- biaoyan (performance)
- xiju (theater/drama)
- wudao (dance)
- bale wu (ballet)
- xiandai wu (modern dance)
- minjian wu (folk dance)
- gejiu (opera - general)
- jingju (Beijing opera)
- xiangsheng (crosstalk comedy)
- zajii (acrobatics)
- mosu (magic)

Music:

- yinyue (music)
- gegu (song)
- changpian (album)
- yueqi (musical instrument)
- gangqin (piano)
- xiaotiqen (violin)
- jita (guitar)
- guzheng (guzheng, Chinese zither)
- erhu (erhu, Chinese fiddle)
- pipa (pipa, Chinese lute)
- dizi (bamboo flute)
- gu (drum)
- chuidi yunyue (wind music)
- xianyue (string music)
- hechang (chorus, choir)

- yuedui (band)
- guanxian yue tuan (orchestra)

Film and TV:

- dianying (movie, film)
- dianshi (television)
- jiemu (program)
- lianzuxu ju (TV series)
- jilu pian (documentary)
- donghua pian (animated film)
- xiju (comedy)
- beiju (tragedy)
- dongzuo pian (action film)
- aiqing pian (romance film)
- kehuan pian (science fiction film)
- kongbu pian (horror film)
- daoyuan (director)
- bianju (screenwriter)
- yanyuan (actor/actress)
- mingxing (star, celebrity)
- juben (script)
- paishi (shoot/film)
- jinji (editing)

Literature:

- wenxue (literature)
- shi (poetry)
- xiaoshuo (novel)
- duanpian (short story)
- sarnwan (essay)
- xiju (drama/play)
- tonghua (fairy tale)
- zhua ji (biography)

- zuojia (writer, author)
- shiren (poet)
- pinglun (critique, review)

Part 18: Useful Phrases for Different Situations

18.1 At the Airport

1. Wo yao ban li dengji shouxu. (I want to check in.)
2. Wo de hangban hao shi... (My flight number is...)
3. Wo you liang jian xing li. (I have two pieces of luggage.)
4. Wo xiang yao kao chuang hu de weizhi. (I'd like a window seat.)
5. Dengji men zai nar? (Where is the boarding gate?)
6. Feiji ji dian qi fei? (What time does the plane take off?)
7. Wo de xing li diu le. (My luggage is lost.)
8. Zhe shi wo de dengji pai. (This is my boarding pass.)
9. Wo xuyao zhuan ji. (I need to transfer.)
10. Haiguan zai nar? (Where is customs?)

18.2 At the Hotel

1. Wo ding le yi ge fang jian. (I booked a room.)
2. Wo de yuding hao shi... (My reservation number is...)
3. Wo xiang ru zhu. (I'd like to check in.)
4. Wo xiang tui fang. (I'd like to check out.)
5. You mei you wifi? (Is there wifi?)
6. Wifi mima shi shenme? (What's the wifi password?)
7. Wo de fang jian xuyao qing jie. (My room needs cleaning.)
8. Kong tiao bu neng yong. (The air conditioning doesn't work.)
9. Ke yi huan fang jian ma? (Can I change rooms?)
10. Fang jian li you bingxiang ma? (Is there a refrigerator

in the room?)
11. Ji dian chi zao fan? (What time is breakfast?)
12. Zao can zai nar? (Where is breakfast?)
13. Qing bang wo jiao yi liang chu zu che. (Please call me a taxi.)
14. You mei you xi yi fu wu? (Is there laundry service?)
15. Wo xiang yan chang yi tian. (I'd like to extend for one day.)

18.3 At the Restaurant (Extended)

1. You kong weizhi ma? (Do you have available seats?)
2. Wo yao ding yi zhang zhuo. (I want to reserve a table.)
3. Qing gei wo kan cai dan. (Please give me the menu.)
4. You mei you Yingwen cai dan? (Do you have an English menu?)
5. Jin tian de tecan shi shenme? (What's today's special?)
6. Ni men tui jian shenme? (What do you recommend?)
7. Wo dui... guo min. (I'm allergic to...)
8. Bu yao tai la. (Not too spicy.)
9. Wo chi su. (I'm vegetarian.)
10. Qing lai yi hu cha. (Please bring a pot of tea.)
11. Qing bang wo yi xia cai dan. (Please repeat the menu.)
12. Hai xu yao deng duo jiu? (How much longer do we need to wait?)
13. Zhe dao cai tai xian le. (This dish is too salty.)
14. Zhe bu shi wo dian de. (This is not what I ordered.)
15. Qing ba zhe ge da bao. (Please pack this to go.)
16. Mai dan! (Check please!)
17. Wo qing ke. (It's my treat.)
18. Women fenkai fu qian. (Let's split the bill.)
19. Qing kai fapiao. (Please give me a receipt.)
20. Fu wu hen hao! (The service was great!)

18.4 Shopping Phrases (Extended)

1. Wo ke yi kan yi xia ma? (May I take a look?)
2. You mei you bie de yan se? (Do you have other colors?)
3. You mei you xiao yi hao de? (Do you have a smaller size?)
4. You mei you da yi hao de? (Do you have a larger size?)
5. Wo chuan duo da hao? (What size do I wear?)
6. Zhe ge shi shenme cailiao? (What material is this?)
7. Ke yi shi chuan ma? (Can I try it on?)
8. Shi yi jian zai nar? (Where is the fitting room?)
9. Zhe ge tai xiao le. (This is too small.)
10. Zhe ge tai da le. (This is too big.)
11. Hen he shen! (It fits well!)
12. Wo bu tai xi huan. (I don't really like it.)
13. Wo zai kao lü kao lü. (Let me think about it.)
14. Duo shao qian? (How much?)
15. Tai gui le! (Too expensive!)
16. Neng pian yi yi dian ma? (Can it be cheaper?)
17. Zui di jia shi duo shao? (What's the lowest price?)
18. Wo yao zhe ge. (I'll take this.)
19. Yong xian jin hai shi shua ka? (Cash or card?)
20. Ke yi tui huo ma? (Can I return it?)
21. You bao xiu ma? (Is there a warranty?)
22. Qing bang wo bao zhuang. (Please wrap it for me.)
23. Zhe shi song ren de. (This is a gift.)
24. Qing gei wo shouju. (Please give me a receipt.)
25. Xie xie! Zai jian! (Thank you! Goodbye!)

18.5 At the Doctor's Office

1. Wo bu shu fu. (I don't feel well.)
2. Wo sheng bing le. (I'm sick.)
3. Wo tou teng. (I have a headache.)
4. Wo du zi teng. (I have a stomachache.)

5.Wo ke sou. (I'm coughing.)
6.Wo fa shao. (I have a fever.)
7.Wo gan mao le. (I have a cold.)
8.Wo la du zi. (I have diarrhea.)
9.Wo gan jue e xin. (I feel nauseous.)
10.Wo mei you wei kou. (I have no appetite.)
11.Wo shui bu hao. (I can't sleep well.)
12.Wo han chu le. (I broke out in a rash.)
13.Wo dui... guo min. (I'm allergic to...)
14.Wo zai chi yao. (I'm taking medication.)
15.Wo zhe li teng. (It hurts here.)
16.Cong shen me shi hou kai shi de? (When did it start?)
17.Teng de li hai ma? (Does it hurt badly?)
18.Ni yao zuo jian cha. (You need to have an examination.)
19.Wo yao kai yao gei ni. (I'll prescribe medicine for you.)
20.Mei tian chi san ci, yi ci yi pian. (Take three times a day, one pill each time.)

18.6 Emergency Phrases

1.Jiu ming! (Help! / Save me!)
2.Qing bang bang wo! (Please help me!)
3.Chu shi le! (There's an accident!)
4.Kuai jiao jing cha! (Quickly call the police!)
5.Kuai jiao jiu hu che! (Quickly call an ambulance!)
6.Zhao huo le! (There's a fire!)
7.You ren shou shang le! (Someone is injured!)
8.Wo mi lu le. (I'm lost.)
9.Wo de qian bao bei tou le. (My wallet was stolen.)
10.Wo bei qiang le. (I was robbed.)
11.Wo xu yao bang zhu! (I need help!)
12.Zhe shi jin ji qing kuang! (This is an emergency!)
13.Qing dai wo qu yi yuan! (Please take me to the hospital!)
14.Wo yao bao jing. (I want to report to the police.)

15. You mei you ren hui shuo Ying wen? (Does anyone speak English?)

18.7 At the Bank

1. Wo xiang kai hu. (I want to open an account.)
2. Wo xiang cun qian. (I want to deposit money.)
3. Wo xiang qu qian. (I want to withdraw money.)
4. Wo xiang huan qian. (I want to exchange money.)
5. Jin tian de hui lü shi duo shao? (What's today's exchange rate?)
6. Wo xiang ban yi zhang xin yong ka. (I want to apply for a credit card.)
7. Wo de ka bei tun le. (My card was swallowed [by the ATM].)
8. Wo wang ji mi ma le. (I forgot my password.)
9. Wo xiang cha zhang hu. (I want to check my balance.)
10. Wo xiang zhuan zhang. (I want to transfer money.)
11. You shou xu fei ma? (Is there a service fee?)
12. Qing gei wo xiao piao. (Please give me a receipt.)
13. Qu kuan ji zai nar? (Where is the ATM?)
14. Yin hang ji dian kai men? (What time does the bank open?)
15. Yin hang ji dian guan men? (What time does the bank close?)

Conclusion

Final Notes on Latinxua Usage

This comprehensive guide to Latinxua (Latin Script Chinese) has covered:

1. **Phonology and Orthography** - The sound system and spelling conventions

2. **Basic Grammar** - Word order, pronouns, questions, and basic sentence patterns
3. **Verbs and Aspects** - Action words, tenses, and grammatical markers
4. **Nouns and Classifiers** - Naming words and measure words
5. **Adjectives and Adverbs** - Descriptive words and modifiers
6. **Prepositions and Location** - Spatial relationships and position words 7.A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where do you live?) B: Wo zhu zai Beijing. (I live in Beijing.) A: Ni zuo shen me gong zuo? (What do you do for work?) B: Wo shi laoshi. Ni ne? (I'm a teacher. And you?) A: Wo shi xue sheng. Wo zai xue Zhong wen. (I'm a student. I'm studying Chinese.) B: Ni de Zhong wen shuo de hen hao! (Your Chinese is very good!) A: Xie xie! Dan shi wo hai xu yao duo lian xi. (Thank you! But I still need more practice.)

Dialogue 2: At a Coffee Shop

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ni xiang he dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to drink?) B: Qing gei wo yi bei re ka fei. (Please give me a cup of hot coffee.) A: Hao de. Yao bu yao tang he nai? (Okay. Do you want sugar and milk?) B: Zhi yao nai, bu yao tang. (Just milk, no sugar.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Hai yao yi ge san ming zhi. (I also want a sandwich.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) B: Yi gong duo shao qian? (How much in total?) A: Yi gong san shi wu kuai. (35 yuan in total.) B: Zhe shi wu shi kuai. (Here's 50 yuan.) A: Zhao ni shi wu kuai. Xie xie! (Here's your 15 yuan change. Thank you!)

12.2 Daily Conversations

Dialogue 3: Talking About Weather

A: Jin tian tian qi zen me yang? (How's the weather today?) B: Jin tian tian qi hen hao, yang guang ming mei. (The weather is great today, sunny and bright.) A: Shi a, hen shi he chu qu san bu. (Yes, very suitable for going out for a walk.) B: Ming tian hui xia yu ma? (Will it rain tomorrow?) A: Ting shuo ming tian hui xia yu. (I heard it will rain tomorrow.) B: Na wo men zui hao dai san. (Then we'd better bring umbrellas.) A: Ni xi huan shen me ji jie? (What season do you like?) B: Wo zui xi huan qiu tian, bu re ye bu leng. (I like autumn best, not hot and not cold.) A: Wo ye shi! Qiu tian de tian qi zui shu fu. (Me too! Autumn weather is the most comfortable.)

Dialogue 4: Making Plans

A: Zhou mo ni you kong ma? (Are you free this weekend?) B: You a, ni you shen me ji hua? (Yes, do you have any plans?) A: Wo men qu pa shan ba! (Let's go hiking!) B: Hao zhu yi! Ji dian chu fa? (Good idea! What time should we leave?) A: Zao shang ba dian zen me yang? (How about 8 o'clock in the morning?) B: Tai zao le ba. Shi dian hao ma? (That's too early. Is 10 o'clock okay?) A: Hao de. Wo men zai di tie zhan jian mian. (Okay. Let's meet at the subway station.) B: Xu yao dai shen me? (What do we need to bring?) A: Dai shui he yi dian chi de. (Bring water and some snacks.) B: Hao de. Na zhou liu jian! (Okay. See you Saturday!) A: Zhou liu jian! (See you Saturday!)

12.3 Shopping Dialogues

Dialogue 5: Buying Clothes

A: Huan ying guang lin! Xu yao bang mang ma? (Welcome! Do you need help?) B: Wo xiang kan yi xia yi fu. (I'd like to look at clothes.) A: Ni xi huan shen me yan se? (What color do you like?) B: Wo xi huan lan se de. (I like blue.) A: Zhe jian lan se de chen shan zen me yang? (How about this blue shirt?) B: Hen hao kan. Duo shao qian? (Very nice. How

much is it?) A: Yi bai ba shi kuai. (180 yuan.) B: Tai gui le! Neng bu neng pian yi yi dian? (Too expensive! Can it be cheaper?) A: Xian zai zheng zai da zhe, jiu zhe ge jia ge. (It's on sale now, this is the price.) B: Wo ke yi shi chuan ma? (Can I try it on?) A: Dang ran ke yi. Shi yi jian zai na bian. (Of course. The fitting room is over there.) B: Xie xie! (Thank you!)

Dialogue 6: At the Market

A: Zhe ge pin guo duo shao qian yi jin? (How much is this apple per jin?) B: Wu kuai yi jin. (5 yuan per jin.) A: Tai gui le! Si kuai zen me yang? (Too expensive! How about 4 yuan?) B: Bu xing! Zui di si kuai wu. (No way! Lowest is 4.5 yuan.) A: Hao ba. Gei wo liang jin. (Okay. Give me two jin.) B: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) A: Zhe ge ju zi zen me mai? (How do you sell these oranges?) B: Liu kuai yi jin. (6 yuan per jin.) A: Gei wo yi jin ba. (Give me one jin.) B: Hao de. Yi gong shi wu kuai wu. (Okay. 15.5 yuan in total.) A: Zhe shi er shi kuai. (Here's 20 yuan.) B: Zhao ni si kuai wu. (Your change is 4.5 yuan.)

12.4 Travel and Directions

Dialogue 7: Asking for Directions

A: Qing wen, qu huo che zhan zen me zou? (Excuse me, how do I get to the train station?) B: Ni ke yi zuo di tie huo zhe gong gong qi che. (You can take the subway or bus.) A: Zuo di tie yuan bu yuan? (Is it far by subway?) B: Bu yuan, zhi you liang zhan. (Not far, only two stops.) A: Di tie zhan zai nar? (Where is the subway station?) B: Yi zhi zou, zai di er ge lu kou xiang zuo guai. (Go straight, turn left at the second intersection.) A: Duo chang shi jian neng dao? (How long does it take to get there?) B: Da gai shi fen zhong. (About 10 minutes.) A: Xie xie ni! (Thank you!) B: Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)

Dialogue 8: At the Hotel

A: Ni hao! Wo xiang ding yi ge fang jian. (Hello! I'd like to book a room.) B: Hao de. Nin yao dan ren jian hai shi shuang ren jian? (Okay. Do you want a single or double room?) A: Shuang ren jian. (Double room.) B: Zhu ji tian? (How many days will you stay?) A: San tian. (Three days.) B: San tian de hua shi liu bai kuai. (For three days it's 600 yuan.) A: Bao kuo zao can ma? (Does it include breakfast?) B: Dui, bao kuo zao can. (Yes, breakfast is included.) A: Hao de. Wo ding le. (Okay. I'll take it.) B: Qing gei wo kan yi xia nin de shen fen zheng. (Please let me see your ID.) A: Gei ni. (Here you are.) B: Hao de. Zhe shi nin de fang jian yao shi. (Okay. Here's your room key.)

12.5 Restaurant Conversations

Dialogue 9: Ordering Food

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ji wei? (Welcome! How many people?) B: Liang wei. (Two people.) A: Hao de, qing zhe bian zou. (Okay, this way please.) B: Xie xie. Wo men kan yi xia cai dan. (Thank you. Let's look at the menu.) A: Hao de. Xiang he dian shen me? (Okay. What would you like to drink?) B: Liang bei cha. (Two cups of tea.) A: Hao de. Zhun bei hao dian cai le ma? (Okay. Ready to order?) B: Lai yi ge gong bao ji ding, yi ge ma po dou fu. (We'll have kung pao chicken and mapo tofu.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Zai lai yi wan fan. (Also a bowl of rice.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) [After eating] B: Mai dan! (Check please!) A: Yi gong ba shi kuai. (80 yuan in total.) B: Ke yi shua ka ma? (Can I pay by card?) A: Ke yi de. (Yes, you can.)

Dialogue 10: At a Fast Food Restaurant

A: Huan ying guang lin! Nin yao dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to order?) B: Wo yao yi ge han bao

bao, yi fen shu tiao. (I want a hamburger and French fries.) A: Hao de. Yao shen me yin liao? (Okay. What drink?) B: Yi bei ke le. (A cola.) A: Yao da bei hai shi xiao bei? (Large or small?) B: Zhong bei. (Medium.) A: Zai zhe li chi hai shi dai zou? (Eat here or take away?) B: Zai zhe li chi. (Eat here.) A: Hao de. Yi gong san shi er kuai. (Okay. 32 yuan in total.) B: Gei ni. (Here you are.) A: Zhao nin ba kuai. Qing na hao xiao piao. (Your change is 8 yuan. Please keep your receipt.)

12.6 At Work/School

Dialogue 11: Talking with Colleagues

A: Zao shang hao! (Good morning!) B: Zao! Zuo wan shui de hao ma? (Morning! Did you sleep well last night?) A: Bu tai hao. Jia ban dao hen wan. (Not very well. Worked overtime until late.) B: Tai xin ku le! Jin tian mang ma? (That's tough! Are you busy today?) A: Hai hao. Zhong wu yi qi chi fan ma? (Not too bad. Shall we have lunch together at noon?) B: Hao a! Ji dian qu? (Sure! What time?) A: Shi er dian ban zen me yang? (How about 12:30?) B: Mei wen ti. Na shi hou jian. (No problem. See you then.)

Dialogue 12: Student-Teacher Conversation

A: Lao shi, wo you yi ge wen ti. (Teacher, I have a question.) B: Hao de, shen me wen ti? (Okay, what question?) A: Wo bu dong zhe ge zi zen me xie. (I don't understand how to write this character.) B: Rang wo kan kan. Zhe ge zi shi zhe yang xie de. (Let me see. This character is written like this.) A: Wo ming bai le. Xie xie lao shi! (I understand now. Thank you, teacher!) B: Bu ke qi. Hai you bie de wen ti ma? (You're welcome. Any other questions?) A: Mei you le. (No more.) B: Hao de. Ni yao duo lian xi. (Okay. You need to practice more.) A: Wo hui de. (I will.)

Part 13: Cultural Notes and Expressions

13.1 Chinese Idioms and Sayings (Chengyu)

Common Four-Character Idioms:

1. **yi ju liang de** (一举两得) - yi ju liang de Meaning: Kill two birds with one stone Example: Zhe yang zuo ke yi yi ju liang de. (Doing this can kill two birds with one stone.)
2. **ban tu er fei** (半途而废) - ban tu er fei Meaning: Give up halfway Example: Wo men bu neng ban tu er fei. (We cannot give up halfway.)
3. **shui luo shi chu** (水落石出) - shui luo shi chu Meaning: The truth comes out (literally: water recedes, stones appear) Example: Zhen xiang zong hui shui luo shi chu. (The truth will eventually come out.)
4. **yi xin yi yi** (一心一意) - yi xin yi yi Meaning: Wholeheartedly, with single-minded devotion Example: Ta yi xin yi yi de xue xi. (He/she studies wholeheartedly.)
5. **san xin er yi** (三心二意) - san xin er yi Meaning: Half-hearted, of two minds Example: Bu yao san xin er yi. (Don't be half-hearted.)
6. **xin kou ru yi** (心口如一) - xin kou ru yi Meaning: Say what one thinks (literally: heart and mouth as one) Example: Ta shi ge xin kou ru yi de ren. (He/she is a person who says what they think.)
7. **yi yan jiu ding** (一言九鼎) - yi yan jiu ding Meaning: A word carries weight (literally: one word, nine cauldrons) Example: Ta shuo hua yi yan jiu ding. (His/her word carries great weight.)
8. **hua long dian jing** (画龙点睛) - hua long dian jing Meaning: Add the finishing touch Example: Zhe ju hua qi dao hua long dian jing de zuo yong. (This sentence adds the finishing touch.)

9. **sai weng shi ma** (塞翁失马) - sai weng shi ma Meaning: A blessing in disguise Example: Sai weng shi ma, yan zhi fei fu. (Losing the horse - who knows if it's a blessing or curse.)
10. **bu gong zi po** (不攻自破) - bu gong zi po Meaning: Collapse without being attacked (of a false argument) Example: Zhe ge shuo fa bu gong zi po. (This argument collapses on its own.)

13.2 Common Proverbs

1. **Shi jian jiu shi jin qian.** (时间就是金钱。) Time is money.
2. **Shi jian bu deng ren.** (时间不等人。) Time waits for no one.
3. **Shui jiao zao qi shen ti hao.** (睡觉早起身体好。) Early to bed and early to rise makes one healthy.
4. **Hao hao xue xi, tian tian xiang shang.** (好好学习，天天向上。) Study well and make progress every day.
5. **Yi fen geng yun, yi fen shou huo.** (一分耕耘，一分收获。) You reap what you sow.
6. **Shi bai shi cheng gong zhi mu.** (失败是成功之母。) Failure is the mother of success.
7. **Lao shi shi fu mu.** (老师是父母。) Teachers are like parents.
8. **You peng zi yuan fang lai, bu yi le hu?** (有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎？) Isn't it delightful to have friends come from afar?
9. **Tiao zao de niao er you chong chi.** (早起的鸟儿有虫吃。) The early bird catches the worm.
10. **Yi ge hao han san ge bang.** (一个好汉三个帮。) Even a hero needs help from others.

13.3 Festive Greetings

Chinese New Year:

- Xin nian kuai le! (新年快乐！) - Happy New Year!
- Gong xi fa cai! (恭喜发财！) - Wishing you prosperity!
- Wan shi ru yi! (万事如意！) - May all your wishes come true!
- Shen ti jian kang! (身体健康！) - Good health!

Other Holidays:

- Sheng dan kuai le! (圣诞快乐！) - Merry Christmas!
- Sheng ri kuai le! (生日快乐！) - Happy Birthday!
- Jie ri kuai le! (节日快乐！) - Happy Holidays!
- Zhong qiu jie kuai le! (中秋节快乐！) - Happy Mid-Autumn Festival!

13.4 Terms of Address

Family Terms:

- Baba/Die (爸爸/爹) - Father, Dad
- Mama/Niang (妈妈/娘) - Mother, Mom
- Gege (哥哥) - Older brother
- Jiejie (姐姐) - Older sister
- Didi (弟弟) - Younger brother
- Meimei (妹妹) - Younger sister
- Yeye (爷爷) - Paternal grandfather
- Nainai (奶奶) - Paternal grandmother
- Waigong (外公) - Maternal grandfather
- Waipo (外婆) - Maternal grandmother

Respectful Terms:

- Xiansheng (先生) - Mr., Sir, gentleman
- Nüshi/Xiaojie (女士/小姐) - Ms., Miss, lady
- Laoshi (老师) - Teacher (also used respectfully)
- Shifu (师傅) - Master (for skilled workers)

- Tongzhi (同志) - Comrade (less common now)

Part 14: Practice Exercises and Examples

14.1 Fill in the Blank Exercises

Exercise Set 1: Basic Sentences

1. Wo ____ xuesheng. (I am a student.) [Answer: shi]
2. Ta hen ____. (She is very tall.) [Answer: gao]
3. Wo men ____ qu Beijing. (We want to go to Beijing.) [Answer: xiang]
4. Ni ____ shenme? (What do you like?) [Answer: xihuan]
5. Jintian ____ hen hao. (The weather is very good today.) [Answer: tianqi]
6. Wo ____ liang ge pengyou. (I have two friends.) [Answer: you]
7. Ta zai ____ shu. (He/she is reading a book.) [Answer: kan]
8. Zhe ____ wo de. (This is mine.) [Answer: shi]
9. Ni zhu zai ____? (Where do you live?) [Answer: nar]
10. Wo ____ Zhongwen. (I study Chinese.) [Answer: xue]

Exercise Set 2: Time Expressions

1. Jintian ____ ji? (What day is today?) [Answer: xingqi]
2. Xianzai ____ dian? (What time is it now?) [Answer: ji]
3. Wo ____ qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.) [Answer: liu dian]
4. ____ tian wo qu Beijing. (Yesterday I went to Beijing.) [Answer: Zuo]
5. ____ tian wo yao qu Shanghai. (Tomorrow I'm going to Shanghai.) [Answer: Ming]
6. Wo ____ xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I've studied Chinese for three years.) [Answer: yijing]
7. Ta ____ lai le. (He/she just came.) [Answer: gang]

8. Qing _____ deng. (Please wait a moment.) [Answer: shao]
9. Wo _____ chi fan le. (I already ate.) [Answer: yijing]
10. Ta _____ mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.) [Answer: hai]

14.2 Translation Exercises

English to Latinxua:

1. I like to drink tea. → Wo xihuan he cha.
2. He is my teacher. → Ta shi wo de laoshi.
3. Where is the library? → Tushuguan zai nar?
4. This book is very interesting. → Zhe ben shu hen youyisi.
5. Can you speak Chinese? → Ni hui shuo Zhongwen ma?
6. I want to buy a ticket. → Wo yao mai piao.
7. The weather is very cold today. → Jintian tianqi hen leng.
8. We are going to watch a movie. → Women qu kan dianying.
9. She has three cats. → Ta you san zhi mao.
10. How much does this cost? → Zhe ge duo shao qian?
11. I don't understand. → Wo bu dong.
12. Please speak slowly. → Qing shuo man yi dian.
13. What time do you get up? → Ni ji dian qi chuang?
14. I live in Beijing. → Wo zhu zai Beijing.
15. He is taller than me. → Ta bi wo gao.

Latinxua to English:

1. Wo yao yi bei kafei. → I want a cup of coffee.
2. Ta hen congming. → He/she is very smart.
3. Ni qu nar? → Where are you going?
4. Wo bu xihuan chi la de. → I don't like to eat spicy food.
5. Zhe shi wo de pengyou. → This is my friend.
6. Ni hui shuo Yingwen ma? → Can you speak English?

7. Wo mei tian zao shang liu dian qi chuang. → I get up at 6 AM every morning.
8. Ta zai xuexiao gongzuo. → He/she works at school.
9. Zhe ge tai gui le. → This is too expensive.
10. Women qu gongyuan ba! → Let's go to the park!
11. Ni you xiongdi jiemei ma? → Do you have siblings?
12. Wo bu hui youyong. → I don't know how to swim.
13. Jintian xingqi ji? → What day is today?
14. Ta zai zuo shenme? → What is he/she doing?
15. Wo yijing chi le. → I already ate.

14.3 Sentence Building Practice

Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

1. Wo (I) + chi (eat) + fan (rice) → Wo chi fan. (I eat rice.)
2. Ta (He/she) + kan (watch) + dianshi (TV) → Ta kan dianshi. (He/she watches TV.)
3. Women (We) + xue (study) + Yingwen (English) → Women xue Yingwen. (We study English.)
4. Nimen (You pl.) + he (drink) + cha (tea) → Nimen he cha. (You drink tea.)
5. Tamen (They) + mai (buy) + shu (books) → Tamen mai shu. (They buy books.)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

1. Tianqi (weather) + hen hao (very good) → Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge (this) + hen gui (very expensive) → Zhe ge hen gui. (This is very expensive.)
3. Ta (he/she) + hen piaoliang (very beautiful) → Ta hen piaoliang. (He/she is very beautiful.)
4. Wo (I) + hen lei (very tired) → Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
5. Fangzi (house) + hen da (very big) → Fangzi hen da. (The house is very big.)

Pattern: Question with "ma"

1. Ni shi xuesheng. → Ni shi xuesheng ma? (Are you a student?)
2. Ta xihuan kafei. → Ta xihuan kafei ma? (Does he/she like coffee?)
3. Ni qu Beijing. → Ni qu Beijing ma? (Are you going to Beijing?)
4. Tianqi hao. → Tianqi hao ma? (Is the weather good?)
5. Ni you shijian. → Ni you shijian ma? (Do you have time?)

14.4 Reading Comprehension Passages

Passage 1: Self-Introduction

Wo jiao Zhang Wei. Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Wo jin nian er shi wu sui. Wo shi yi ge laoshi. Wo zai yi suo xiao xue gongzuo. Wo hen xihuan wo de gongzuo. Wo you yi ge xing fu de jiating. Wo you yi ge qizi he yi ge nüer. Wo de qizi shi yisheng. Wo de nüer jin nian wu sui. Wo men zhu zai Beijing. Wo xihuan du shu he yundong. Wo mei tian zou bu shang ban. Zhou mo wo chang chang gen jiaren yi qi qu gongyuan.

Questions:

1. Zhang Wei zuo shenme gongzuo? (What is Zhang Wei's job?) - Ta shi laoshi. (He is a teacher.)
2. Ta ji sui? (How old is he?) - Ta er shi wu sui. (He is 25 years old.)
3. Ta de qizi zuo shenme? (What does his wife do?) - Ta de qizi shi yisheng. (His wife is a doctor.)
4. Ta men zhu zai nar? (Where do they live?) - Ta men zhu zai Beijing. (They live in Beijing.)
5. Ta xi huan zuo shenme? (What does he like to do?) - Ta xihuan du shu he yundong. (He likes reading and exercising.)

Passage 2: A Day at School

Jin tian shi xing qi yi. Wo zao shang qi dian qi chuang. Wo xi lian, shua ya, chi zao fan. Ba dian wo zou lu qu xue xiao. Wo de xue xiao li jia bu yuan. Zou lu zhi xu yao shi wu fen zhong. Jiu dian wo men kai shi shang ke. Shang wu wo you san jie ke: Zhong wen, shu xue he Ying wen. Zhong wu shi er dian wo zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. Xia wu wo you liang jie ke: li shi he ti yu. San dian ban wo xia ke. Ran hou wo qu tu shu guan du shu. Wu dian wo hui jia. Wan shang wo zuo zuo ye, kan yi hui dian shi. Shi dian wo shui jiao.

Questions:

1. Ta ji dian qi chuang? (What time does he/she get up?) - Ta qi dian qi chuang. (He/she gets up at 7 o'clock.)
2. Xue xiao li jia yuan ma? (Is school far from home?) - Bu yuan. (Not far.)
3. Shang wu you ji jie ke? (How many classes in the morning?) - You san jie ke. (There are three classes.)
4. Ta zai nar chi wu fan? (Where does he/she eat lunch?) - Ta zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. (He/she eats lunch in the school cafeteria.)
5. Ta ji dian shui jiao? (What time does he/she go to bed?) - Ta shi dian shui jiao. (He/she goes to bed at 10 o'clock.)

Part 15: Advanced Topics

15.1 Classical Chinese Influence

Latinxua, while designed as a modern romanization system, still represents the Chinese language which contains many classical elements. Many common expressions have classical origins:

Examples:

1. Jiu nian yi bie (久年一别) - Long time no see (literally: long years, one separation)
2. Ri yue ru suo (日月如梭) - Time flies (literally: sun and moon like shuttles)
3. Xue er shi xi (学而时习) - Learning and practicing regularly
4. You peng zi yuan fang lai (有朋自远方来) - Having friends come from afar

15.2 Regional Variations

While Latinxua was designed for Standard Mandarin, regional variations exist:

Beijing dialect features:

- More use of "r" sound (erhua)
- Example: nar (where) vs. nali

Southern variations:

- Less distinction between zh/ch/sh and z/c/s
- Different vocabulary choices

15.3 Formal vs. Informal Speech

Formal:

- Use of nin (您) instead of ni (你)
- More complete sentence structures
- Polite particles and expressions

Informal:

- Shortened forms
- Colloquial expressions
- Casual particles

Examples: Formal: Qing wen, nin gui xing? (May I ask your honored surname?) Informal: Ni jiao shenme mingzi? (What's your name?)

15.4 Written vs. Spoken Differences

Written Style:

- More formal vocabulary
- Complete grammatical structures
- Classical influences

Spoken Style:

- Colloquialisms
- Shortened forms
- Repetition for emphasis

15.5 Common Mistakes and Corrections

Mistake 1: Using "shi" with adjectives Wrong: Ta shi gao. Correct: Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)

Mistake 2: Forgetting measure words Wrong: Wo you san shu. Correct: Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)

Mistake 3: Wrong word order with time expressions Wrong: Wo qu jintian Beijing. Correct: Wo jintian qu Beijing. (I'm going to Beijing today.)

Mistake 4: Confusing "hen" and "shi" Wrong: Zhe shi hen hao. Correct: Zhe hen hao. OR Zhe shi hao de. (This is good.)

Mistake 5: Using "de" incorrectly Wrong: Wo de shi xuesheng. Correct: Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)

Part 16: Reference Tables

16.1 Measure Word Quick Reference

Measure Word	Used For	Examples
ge	general	yi ge ren (one person)

Measure Word	Used For	Examples
	items, people	
ben	books, magazines	liang ben shu (two books)
zhang	flat objects	san zhang zhi (three sheets of paper)
tiao	long objects	si tiao yu (four fish)
zhi	animals, some objects	wu zhi mao (five cats)
ba	objects with handles	liu ba yizi (six chairs)
jian	clothes, matters	qi jian yifu (seven pieces of clothing)
liang	vehicles	ba liang che (eight cars)
bei	cups, glasses	jiu bei shui (nine glasses of water)
ping	bottles	shi ping pijiu (ten bottles of beer)

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being

replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"

- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)

5.Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1.Wo de shu. (My book.)
2.Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3.Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4.Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5.Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6.Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7.Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8.Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9.Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10.Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10. Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3. Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4. Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5. Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study

Chinese?)
6. Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7. Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8. Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9. Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10. Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1. Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2. Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3. Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4. Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)

- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1. Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2. Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3. Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4. Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5. Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6. Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8. Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)

10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)

8.Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9.Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10.Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11.Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12.Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13.Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14.Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15.Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1.Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2.Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3.Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4.Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5.Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6.Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7.Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8.Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)

9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)

8.Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9.Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10.Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1.Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2.Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3.Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4.Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5.Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6.Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7.Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8.Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9.Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10.Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11.Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12.Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13.Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14.Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15.Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2. Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3. Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4. Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5. Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6. Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7. Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8. Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9. Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10. Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11. Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12. Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13. Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14. Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15. Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1. Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2. Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3. Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4. Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5. Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6. Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7. Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8. Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9. Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10. Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)

- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)

- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)

- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)

- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)

- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)

- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)

4.Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5.Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1.Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2.Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3.Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4.Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5.Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)

- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)

- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)

- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)

- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)

- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10. Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1. Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2. Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4. Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5. Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1. Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)

2. Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3. Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4. Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5. Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1. Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)

3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)

- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at

school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)

9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two

hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)

- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like

coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)

4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)
5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to

go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)
3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll go see you.)

8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)
4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)
10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)

6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)

4.Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5.Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6.Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7.Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8.Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9.Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10.Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11.Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12.Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)
13.Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14.Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15.Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1.Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2.Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by him/her.)
3.Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4.Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5.Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6.Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7.Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8.Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9.Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10.Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11.Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written

wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)
3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)
7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)

15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)
9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)
4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)
7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)

4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)
5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable

and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)
- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)

- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)
- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)
- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)

- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)
- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)
- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)

- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)
- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)
- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)
- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)

- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)
- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)
- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)
- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)

- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)
- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)
- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)
- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)

- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)
- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)
- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)
- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)

- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)
- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)
- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)

- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)
- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)
- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)
- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)
- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)
- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)

- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)
- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)
- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)

- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)
- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)
- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)
- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)
- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter)

Transportation Infrastructure:

- lu (road)

- jie (street)
- gao su gong lu (highway, expressway)
- qiao (bridge)
- sui dao (tunnel)
- che zhan (station)
- huo che zhan (train station)
- gong gong qi che zhan (bus station)
- ji chang (airport)
- gang kou (port, harbor)
- ma tou (dock, wharf)
- jia you zhan (gas station)
- ting che chang (parking lot)
- hong lu deng (traffic light)
- ban ma xian (zebra crossing, crosswalk)

10.8 Buildings and Places

Housing:

- fangzi (house)
- gong yu (apartment)
- bie shu (villa)
- su she (dormitory)
- lü guan (hotel, inn)
- fan dian (hotel, restaurant)

Rooms:

- fangjian (room)
- ke ting (living room)
- wo shi (bedroom)
- chu fang (kitchen)
- can ting (dining room)
- yu shi (bathroom)
- ce suo (toilet, restroom)

- shu fang (study)
- che ku (garage)
- yang tai (balcony)
- yuan zi (yard, courtyard)
- hua yuan (garden)
- wu ding (rooftop)
- di xia shi (basement)

Public Places:

- shangdian (store, shop)
- shang chang (shopping mall)
- chao shi (supermarket)
- shi chang (market)
- yin hang (bank)
- you ju (post office)
- yi yuan (hospital)
- zhen suo (clinic)
- yao dian (pharmacy)
- tu shu guan (library)
- xue xiao (school)
- you er yuan (kindergarten)
- xiao xue (elementary school)
- zhong xue (middle/high school)
- da xue (university)
- gong si (company)
- ban gong shi (office)
- gong chang (factory)
- can guan/fan dian (restaurant)
- ka fei dian (coffee shop)
- cha guan (tea house)
- jiu ba (bar, pub)
- jiu dian (hotel)

- dian ying yuan (cinema, movie theater)
- ju chang (theater)
- bo wu guan (museum)
- mei shu guan (art museum/gallery)
- gong yuan (park)
- dong wu yuan (zoo)
- you le chang (amusement park)
- ti yu guan (stadium, gymnasium)
- you yong chi (swimming pool)
- jiao tang (church)
- si miao (temple)
- qing zhen si (mosque)

City Features:

- cheng shi (city)
- xiang cun (countryside, village)
- shi zhong xin (city center, downtown)
- jie dao (street)
- guang chang (square, plaza)
- gong she (park)
- hu tai yuan (botanical garden)

10.9 Technology and Modern Life

Electronics:

- dian nao (computer)
- bi ji ben dian nao (laptop)
- ping ban dian nao (tablet)
- shou ji (mobile phone)
- zhi neng shou ji (smartphone)
- dian hua (telephone)
- dian shi (television)
- shou yin ji (radio)

- zhao xiang ji (camera)
- lu xiang ji (video camera)
- xiang ji (camera)
- shu ma xiang ji (digital camera)
- ji pan (keyboard)
- shu biao (mouse)
- yin xiang (speaker)
- er ji (headphones)
- mai ke feng (microphone)
- da yin ji (printer)
- sao miao yi (scanner)
- U pan (USB drive)

Internet and Communication:

- hu lian wang/wang lu (internet)
- dian zi you jian (email)
- wang zhan (website)
- wang ye (webpage)
- liu lan qi (browser)
- sou suo yin qing (search engine)
- she jiao mei ti (social media)
- wei xin (WeChat)
- duan xin (text message, SMS)
- shi pin tong hua (video call)
- xu ni xian shi (virtual reality)

Appliances:

- bing xiang (refrigerator)
- xi yi ji (washing machine)
- hong gan ji (dryer)
- wei bo lu (microwave oven)
- kao xiang (oven)
- dian fan (electric fan)

- kong tiao (air conditioner)
- nuan qi (heater)
- chui feng ji (hair dryer)
- dian dong ya shua (electric toothbrush)
- xi chen qi (vacuum cleaner)

10.10 Colors and Descriptions

Colors:

- yan se (color)
- hong se (red)
- huang se (yellow)
- lan se (blue)
- lü se (green)
- hei se (black)
- bai se (white)
- hui se (gray)
- fen hong se (pink)
- cheng se (orange)
- zi se (purple)
- zong se (brown)
- jin se (gold)
- yin se (silver)
- shen (dark, deep)
- qian (light, pale)
- xian yan (bright, vivid)
- an (dark, dim)

Patterns and Textures:

- hua wen (pattern)
- tiao wen (stripe)
- bo dian (polka dot)
- hua (floral pattern)

- guang hua (smooth)
- cu cao (rough)
- ruan (soft)
- ying (hard)

10.11 Emotions and Feelings

Positive Emotions:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuai le (joyful, happy)
- xing fu (blessed, happy)
- man yi (satisfied)
- gan dong (moved, touched)
- ji dong (excited)
- xing fen (excited, thrilled)
- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- man zu (satisfied)
- gan ji (grateful)
- zi hao (proud)
- zi xin (confident)
- xi wang (hope)
- le guan (optimistic)
- ping jing (calm, peaceful)
- qing song (relaxed)
- shu fu (comfortable)

Negative Emotions:

- nan guo (sad)
- shang xin (sad, heartbroken)
- ku (cry, weep)
- sheng qi (angry)
- fen nu (furious, angry)

- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- kong ju (fearful, terrified)
- jin zhang (nervous, tense)
- dan xin (worried)
- jiao lü (anxious)
- ya li (pressure, stress)
- lei (tired)
- pi lao (exhausted, fatigued)
- wu liao (bored)
- ji mo (lonely)
- gu du (solitary, lonely)
- ju sang (disappointed)
- hou hui (regret)
- chou hen (hate)
- ji du (jealous)
- kun huo (confused, puzzled)
- shang xin (upset, sad)

10.12 Activities and Hobbies

Sports:

- yun dong (sport, exercise)
- ti yu (physical education, sports)
- zu qiu (soccer, football)
- lan qiu (basketball)
- wang qiu (tennis)
- ping pang qiu (table tennis)
- pai qiu (volleyball)
- bang qiu (baseball)
- gan lan qiu (rugby, American football)
- yu mao qiu (badminton)
- gao er fu qiu (golf)
- bing qiu (ice hockey)

- hua bing (ice skating)
- hua xue (skiing)
- you yong (swimming)
- tiao shui (diving)
- pao bu (running, jogging)
- qi zi xing che (cycling)
- deng shan (mountain climbing, hiking)
- yu jia (yoga)
- wu shu (martial arts)
- tai ji quan (Tai Chi)
- quan ji (boxing)
- shai ma (horseback riding)

Hobbies:

- ai hao (hobby)
- du shu (reading)
- xie zuo (writing)
- hua hua (painting, drawing)
- she ying (photography)
- yin yue (music)
- chang ge (singing)
- tiao wu (dancing)
- tan gang qin (playing piano)
- tan ji ta (playing guitar)
- la xiao ti qin (playing violin)
- chui chang di (playing flute)
- ting yin yue (listening to music)
- kan dian ying (watching movies)
- kan dian shi (watching television)
- wan you xi (playing games)
- dian zi you xi (video games)
- peng ren (cooking)

- hong bei (baking)
- yuan yi (gardening)
- shou ji (collecting)
- lü you (traveling)
- ye ying (camping)
- diao yu (fishing)
- qi yi (playing chess)
- ma jiang (mahjong)
- pu ke (poker)
- bian zhi (knitting)
- ci xiu (embroidery)

10.13 Education and Learning

School Subjects:

- ke mu (subject, course)
- zhong wen (Chinese language)
- ying wen (English)
- shu xue (mathematics)
- ke xue (science)
- wu li (physics)
- hua xue (chemistry)
- sheng wu (biology)
- li shi (history)
- di li (geography)
- zheng zhi (politics)
- jing ji (economics)
- yi shu (art)
- yin yue (music)
- ti yu (physical education)
- dian nao (computer science)
- wen xue (literature)
- zhe xue (philosophy)

- xin li xue (psychology)
- she hui xue (sociology)
- fa lü (law)
- yi xue (medicine)
- gong cheng (engineering)
- shang ye (business)

School Items:

- shu (book)
- ke ben (textbook)
- bi ji ben (notebook)
- bi (pen)
- qian bi (pencil)
- gang bi (fountain pen)
- yuan zhu bi (ballpoint pen)
- xiang pi (eraser)
- chi (ruler)
- jiao shui (glue)
- jian dao (scissors)
- ding shu ji (stapler)
- jie shu qi (pencil sharpener)
- ji suan qi (calculator)
- zi dian (dictionary)
- di tu (map)
- bei bao (backpack)
- qian bi he (pencil case)
- zhi (paper)

Learning Activities:

- xue xi (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- du (read)
- xie (write)

- ting (listen)
- shuo (speak)
- lian xi (practice, exercise)
- fu xi (review)
- yu xi (preview)
- ji (remember, memorize)
- li jie (understand)
- si kao (think)
- yan jiu (research)
- kao shi (exam, test)
- zuo ye (homework)
- wen ti (question, problem)
- da an (answer)
- fen shu (score, grade)
- cheng ji (grade, achievement)
- bi ye (graduate)
- xue wei (degree)

10.14 Health and Medical Terms

Body Conditions:

- jian kang (healthy)
- sheng bing (to be sick)
- bing (illness, disease)
- teng (pain, ache)
- tou teng (headache)
- ya teng (toothache)
- du zi teng (stomachache)
- fa shao (fever)
- ke sou (cough)
- gan mao (cold, flu)
- liu gan (influenza)
- la du zi (diarrhea)

- ou tu (vomit)
- guo min (allergy)
- shang kou (wound, injury)
- gu zhe (bone fracture)
- shao shang (burn)
- liu xue (bleeding)

Medical Treatment:

- kan bing (see a doctor)
- zhen duan (diagnose)
- zhi liao (treat, treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- zhong yao (Chinese medicine)
- xi yao (Western medicine)
- yao pian (pill, tablet)
- yao shui (liquid medicine)
- da zhen (injection, shot)
- shou shu (surgery, operation)
- jian cha (examination, checkup)
- X guang (X-ray)
- hua yan (blood test)
- ti wen (body temperature)
- xue ya (blood pressure)
- chu fang (prescription)
- bang dai (bandage)
- gao yao (ointment)

Medical Specialists:

- yi sheng (doctor)
- hu shi (nurse)
- wai ke yi sheng (surgeon)
- nei ke yi sheng (physician)
- ya yi (dentist)

- yan ke yi sheng (ophthalmologist)
- er bi hou ke yi sheng (ENT doctor)
- pi fu ke yi sheng (dermatologist)
- er ke yi sheng (pediatrician)
- jing shen ke yi sheng (psychiatrist)

10.15 Money and Shopping

Money:

- qian (money)
- yuan (yuan, Chinese currency unit)
- kuai (colloquial for yuan)
- mao/jiao (10 cents)
- fen (cent)
- ying bi (coin)
- zhi bi (paper money, bill)
- xin yong ka (credit card)
- chu xu ka (debit card)
- xian jin (cash)
- yin hang ka (bank card)
- jia ge (price)
- duo shao qian (how much money)

Shopping:

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell)
- gou wu (shopping)
- gu ke (customer)
- shou huo yuan (salesperson)
- fu qian (pay money)
- zhao qian (give change)
- gui (expensive)
- pian yi (cheap)

- zhe kou (discount)
- da zhe (on sale, discount)
- mian fei (free of charge)
- shou ju (receipt)
- tui huo (return goods)
- huan huo (exchange goods)
- shi chuan (try on clothes)
- bao zhuang (packaging, wrap)
- song huo (delivery)

10.16 Common Verbs - Extended List

Motion Verbs:

- zou (walk, go, leave)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- fei (fly)
- you (swim)
- pa (climb, crawl)
- gun (roll)
- hua (slide)
- kai (drive)
- qi (ride)
- zuo (sit, take [transport])

Action Verbs:

- zuo (do, make)
- gong zuo (work)
- xiu xi (rest)
- shui jiao (sleep)
- qi chuang (get up)
- xi zao (take a bath)
- xi lian (wash face)

- shua ya (brush teeth)
- ti tou (comb hair)
- chuan (wear, put on)
- tuo (take off)
- kai (open, start)
- guan (close, turn off)
- da kai (open)
- guan shang (close)
- na (take, hold)
- fang (put, place)
- song (send, give as gift)
- jie (receive, borrow)
- jie (lend)
- huan (return, give back)
- wen (ask)
- da (answer, reply)
- gao su (tell, inform)
- wen (smell)
- ting (listen)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- kan jian (see, catch sight of)
- ting jian (hear)
- peng (touch)
- mo (touch, feel)

Communication Verbs:

- shuo (speak, say)
- shuo hua (speak, talk)
- jiang (speak, tell)
- tan (chat, talk)
- jiao (call, be named)
- wen (ask)

- hui da (answer, reply)
- jie shi (explain)
- miao shu (describe)
- tao lun (discuss)
- zheng lun (argue, debate)
- da dian hua (make a phone call)
- fa duan xin (send text message)
- fa you jian (send email)

Mental Verbs:

- xiang (think, want)
- si kao (think, ponder)
- ji de (remember)
- wang ji (forget)
- zhi dao (know)
- ren shi (know [people], recognize)
- dong (understand)
- ming bai (understand, realize)
- xiang xin (believe)
- huai yi (doubt)
- xi wang (hope)
- qi dai (expect, look forward to)
- jue de (feel, think)

Emotion Verbs:

- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- tao yan (dislike, hate)
- hai pa (be afraid)
- dan xin (worry)
- gao xing (be happy)
- shang xin (be sad)
- sheng qi (be angry)

- xiao (laugh, smile)
- ku (cry)

Part 11: Sentence Patterns and Expressions

11.1 Greetings and Polite Expressions

Greetings:

1. Ni hao! (Hello!)
2. Nin hao! (Hello! - formal)
3. Da jia hao! (Hello everyone!)
4. Zao shang hao! (Good morning!)
5. Wan shang hao! (Good evening!)
6. Wan an! (Good night!)
7. Ni hao ma? (How are you?)
8. Ni zui jin zen me yang? (How have you been lately?)
9. Hen jiu bu jian! (Long time no see!)
10. Huan ying! (Welcome!)

Farewells:

1. Zai jian! (Goodbye!)
2. Ming tian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
3. Hui tou jian! (See you later!)
4. Yi hui jian! (See you in a bit!)
5. Wan an! (Good night!)
6. Bai bai! (Bye bye!)
7. Zou hao! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
8. Man zou! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
9. Yi lu ping an! (Have a safe journey!)
10. Bao zhong! (Take care of yourself!)

Polite Expressions:

1. Xie xie! (Thank you!)
2. Duo xie! (Thank you very much!)

3.Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)
4.Bu yong xie! (No need to thank!)
5.Mei guan xi! (It's okay! / No problem!)
6.Dui bu qi! (Sorry! / Excuse me!)
7.Mei shi! (It's nothing! / No problem!)
8.Qing! (Please!)
9.Qing wen! (Excuse me, may I ask...)
10.Ma fan ni le! (Sorry to trouble you!)
11.Bu hao yi si! (Sorry! / Embarrassed!)
12.Zhen bao qian! (I'm really sorry!)
13.Qing yuan liang! (Please forgive me!)
14.Mei you guan xi! (It doesn't matter!)
15.Zhu ni hao yun! (Good luck!)

Making Requests:

1.Qing bang mang! (Please help!)
2.Ke yi bang wo ma? (Can you help me?)
3.Qing gei wo... (Please give me...)
4.Wo xiang yao... (I would like...)
5.Ke yi ma? (Is it okay? / May I?)
6.Qing shao deng! (Please wait a moment!)
7.Qing zai shuo yi bian! (Please say it again!)
8.Qing shuo man yi dian! (Please speak slower!)
9.Qing wen... (May I ask... / Excuse me...)
10.Neng bu neng...? (Can you...?)

11.2 Common Question Patterns

What Questions:

1.Zhe shi shen me? (What is this?)
2.Ni zai zuo shen me? (What are you doing?)
3.Ni xiang chi shen me? (What do you want to eat?)
4.Ni de ming zi shi shen me? (What is your name?)
5.Ni de gong zuo shi shen me? (What is your job?)
6.Zhe ge zen me shuo? (How do you say this?)
7.Shen me yi si? (What does it mean?)

8.Fa sheng le shen me shi? (What happened?)
9.Ni you shen me wen ti? (What questions do you have?)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Who Questions:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2.Ta shi shei? (Who is he/she?)
3.Shei zai nar? (Who is there?)
4.Shei de? (Whose is it?)
5.Ni zhao shei? (Who are you looking for?)
6.Shei lai le? (Who came?)
7.Shei zhi dao? (Who knows?)
8.Shei xiang qu? (Who wants to go?)
9.Ni gen shei qu? (Who are you going with?)
10.Shei jiao ni de? (Who taught you?)

Where Questions:

1.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
2.Ni qu nar? (Where are you going?)
3.Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
4.Ce suo zai nar? (Where is the bathroom?)
5.Zhe ge zai nar mai? (Where can I buy this?)
6.Ni cong nar lai? (Where are you from?)
7.Ni de shu zai nar? (Where is your book?)
8.Wo men zai nar jian mian? (Where shall we meet?)
9.Ta qu nar le? (Where did he/she go?)
10.Ni xiang qu nar? (Where do you want to go?)

When Questions:

1.Shen me shi hou? (When?)
2.Ji dian? (What time?)
3.Ji yue? (What month?)
4.Ji hao? (What date?)
5.Xing qi ji? (What day of the week?)
6.Ni shen me shi hou lai? (When will you come?)
7.Ni ji dian qi chuang? (What time do you get up?)

8. Ni shen me shi hou you kong? (When are you free?)
9. Huo che ji dian kai? (What time does the train leave?)
10. Ni shen me shi hou chu sheng? (When were you born?)

How Questions:

1. Zen me yang? (How is it? / How about it?)
2. Zen me qu? (How to go?)
3. Zen me zuo? (How to do it?)
4. Zen me shuo? (How to say it?)
5. Zen me hui shi? (What's going on? / How come?)
6. Ni zen me le? (What's wrong with you?)
7. Zen me ban? (What to do?)
8. Zhe ge zen me yong? (How to use this?)
9. Zen me zou? (How to get there?)
10. Ni jue de zen me yang? (What do you think? / How do you feel about it?)

Why Questions:

1. Wei shen me? (Why?)
2. Ni wei shen me bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
3. Wei shen me bu xing? (Why not?)
4. Ta wei shen me sheng qi? (Why is he/she angry?)
5. Ni wei shen me zhe me wan? (Why are you so late?)
6. Wei shen me bu ke yi? (Why can't [we/I]?)
7. Ni wei shen me bu chi? (Why don't you eat?)
8. Wei shen me yao zhe yang? (Why must it be this way?)
9. Ta wei shen me ku? (Why is he/she crying?)
10. Wei shen me mei you ren? (Why is there no one?)

How Many/Much Questions:

1. Duo shao? (How many? / How much?)
2. Ji ge? (How many?)
3. Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
4. Ni you ji ge xiong di jie mei? (How many siblings do you have?)

5.Ni duo da? / Ni ji sui? (How old are you?)
6.Duo yuan? (How far?)
7.Duo jiu? (How long [time]?)
8.Duo chang? (How long [length]?)
9.Ni you duo gao? (How tall are you?)
10.Duo zhong? (How heavy?)

11.3 Making Suggestions and Offers

Suggestions:

1.Women qu kan dian ying ba! (Let's go watch a movie!)
2.Zhe yang hao bu hao? (How about this?)
3.Ni kan zen me yang? (What do you think?)
4.Wo jian yi... (I suggest...)
5.Ni jue de... zen me yang? (What do you think about...?)
6.Bu ru... (How about...? / Why don't we...?)
7.Women ke yi... (We can...)
8.Yao bu yao...? (Do you want to...?)
9.Women zou ba! (Let's go!)
10.Hao bu hao? (Is that okay? / Okay?)

Offers:

1.Wo lai bang ni! (Let me help you!)
2.Wo qing ni! (My treat! / It's on me!)
3.Yao bu yao wo bang ni? (Do you want me to help you?)
4.Wo gei ni... (I'll give you... / Let me give you...)
5.Rang wo lai! (Let me do it!)
6.Wo song ni! (I'll give it to you! / I'll take you!)
7.Ni xiang bu xiang...? (Would you like to...?)
8.Wo neng wei ni zuo shen me? (What can I do for you?)
9.Wo lai fu qian! (Let me pay!)
10.Wo gei ni da dian hua! (I'll call you!)

11.4 Expressing Opinions and Preferences

Likes and Dislikes:

1.Wo xi huan... (I like...)
2.Wo hen xi huan... (I really like...)
3.Wo zui xi huan... (I like...the most / My favorite is...)
4.Wo ai... (I love...)
5.Wo bu xi huan... (I don't like...)
6.Wo tao yan... (I hate...)
7.Wo bu tai xi huan... (I don't really like...)
8.Wo dui...gan xing qu. (I'm interested in...)
9.Wo dui...mei xing qu. (I'm not interested in...)
10.Wo xi huan...duo yu... (I like...more than...)

Opinions:

1.Wo jue de... (I think... / I feel...)
2.Wo ren wei... (I believe... / In my opinion...)
3.Wo de yi jian shi... (My opinion is...)
4.Wo tong yi. (I agree.)
5.Wo bu tong yi. (I disagree.)
6.Ni shuo de dui. (You're right.)
7.Wo bu zhe me xiang. (I don't think so.)
8.Ke neng ba. (Maybe. / Perhaps.)
9.Dang ran! (Of course!)
10.Que shi shi zhe yang. (That's indeed the case.)
11.Wo bu que ding. (I'm not sure.)
12.Wo ye zhe me xiang. (I think so too.)
13.Ni jue de ne? (What do you think?)
14.Zhe shi hao zhu yi! (That's a good idea!)
15.Zhe bu shi hao ban fa. (This is not a good solution.)

11.5 Expressing Ability and Possibility

Ability:

1.Wo hui... (I can... / I know how to...)
2.Wo neng... (I can... / I'm able to...)
3.Wo ke yi... (I can... / I may...)
4.Wo bu hui... (I can't... / I don't know how to...)
5.Wo zuo de dao. (I can do it.)

6.Wo zuo bu dao. (I can't do it.)
7.Wo xue hui le. (I learned it / I know how now.)
8.Ta hen neng gan. (He/she is very capable.)
9.Wo you neng li. (I have the ability.)
10.Wo ban de dao. (I can manage it.)

Possibility:

1.Ke neng. (Possible. / Maybe.)
2.You ke neng. (It's possible.)
3.Mei ke neng. / Bu ke neng. (Impossible.)
4.Ye xu. (Perhaps.)
5.Hui...de. (Will... / Likely to...)
6.Bu hui...de. (Won't... / Unlikely to...)
7.Da gai. (Probably.)
8.Huo xu. (Perhaps. / Maybe.)
9.Shuo bu ding. (Hard to say. / Maybe.)
10.Nan shuo. (Hard to say.)

11.6 Expressing Needs and Wants

Wants:

1.Wo yao... (I want...)
2.Wo xiang... (I would like to...)
3.Wo xiang yao... (I want...)
4.Wo bu yao. (I don't want.)
5.Wo xi wang... (I hope...)
6.Wo qin dai... (I look forward to...)
7.Wo yuan yi... (I'm willing to... / I'd like to...)
8.Wo xiang mai... (I want to buy...)
9.Ni yao shen me? (What do you want?)
10.Ni xiang yao shen me? (What would you like?)

Needs:

1.Wo xu yao... (I need...)
2.Wo bi xu... (I must...)
3.Wo dei... (I have to... / I must...)

4. Wo ying gai... (I should...)
5. Wo yao... (I need to... / I have to...)
6. Wo bu bi... (I don't need to...)
7. Wo bu xu yao. (I don't need.)
8. Zhe shi bi yao de. (This is necessary.)
9. Wo xu yao bang zhu. (I need help.)
10. Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Part 12: Dialogue Examples

12.1 Meeting Someone

Dialogue 1: First Meeting

A: Ni hao! Wo jiao Li Ming. (Hello! My name is Li Ming.) B: Ni hao! Wo jiao Wang Hong. Hen gao xing ren shi ni. (Hello! My name is Wang Hong. Nice to meet you.) A: Wo ye hen gao xing ren shi ni. Ni shi na guo ren? (I'm also happy to meet you. What nationality are you?) B: Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Ni ne? (I'm Chinese. And you?) A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where

7. **Time Expressions** - Days, dates, hours, and temporal relationships
8. **Complex Sentences** - Conjunctions, conditionals, and advanced structures
9. **Special Patterns** - Ba, bei, and other distinctive Chinese constructions
10. **Extended Vocabulary** - Thematic word lists covering numerous topics
11. **Dialogues** - Practical conversations for real-world situations
12. **Cultural Notes** - Idioms, proverbs, and cultural expressions
13. **Practice Exercises** - Questions, translations, and

comprehension passages
14. **Advanced Topics** - Formal/informal speech, regional variations
15. **Reference Tables** - Quick-lookup guides for grammar and vocabulary
16. **Situational Phrases** - Useful expressions for travel, shopping, emergencies

Study Tips

For Beginners:

1. Start with basic sentence patterns (S + V + O)
2. Master common verbs and adjectives first
3. Practice tones separately from vocabulary (if studying with audio)
4. Learn measure words along with nouns
5. Use flashcards for character-sound associations
6. Practice daily greetings and basic questions
7. Focus on high-frequency words first

For Intermediate Learners:

1. Study complex sentence patterns
2. Learn idiomatic expressions and chengyu
3. Practice different registers (formal vs. informal)
4. Focus on aspect markers (le, guo, zhe)
5. Master directional and result complements
6. Engage in conversation practice
7. Read simple texts and dialogues

For Advanced Learners:

1. Study classical Chinese influences
2. Learn specialized vocabulary for your field
3. Practice writing extended passages
4. Master subtle distinctions between similar words
5. Study regional variations and dialects
6. Read authentic Chinese materials

7. Engage in debates and discussions

Common Learning Challenges and Solutions

Challenge 1: Tones Although Latinxua doesn't mark tones, understanding them is important. Solution: Practice with audio resources; learn tone pairs and patterns.

Challenge 2: Measure Words Many learners struggle with choosing the correct classifier. Solution: Learn nouns together with their measure words; practice common combinations.

Challenge 3: Word Order Chinese word order differs from English in several ways. Solution: Memorize sentence patterns; practice with substitution drills.

Challenge 4: Aspect Markers Le, guo, and zhe have subtle differences. Solution: Study examples in context; practice with timeline exercises.

Challenge 5: Topic-Comment Structure Chinese often uses topic-prominent structure. Solution: Analyze authentic texts; practice topic-comment transformations.

Resources for Further Study

Recommended Practice Activities:

1. Daily conversation practice with native speakers
2. Writing diary entries in Latinxua
3. Watching Chinese media with Latinxua subtitles
4. Participating in language exchange programs
5. Using spaced repetition software for vocabulary
6. Reading graded readers in romanization
7. Listening to Chinese podcasts and music

Building Vocabulary:

- Start with the 1000 most common words
- Learn words in semantic fields (food, family, travel)

- Use context to remember words
- Create associations and mnemonics
- Review regularly using spaced repetition
- Practice using new words in sentences immediately

Grammar Practice:

- Complete pattern drills regularly
- Transform sentences (positive to negative, statement to question)
- Combine simple sentences into complex ones
- Translate between Chinese and your native language
- Analyze sentence structure in authentic texts
- Create your own example sentences

Appendix: Additional Sample Sentences

300 More Practice Sentences:

Daily Life (51-100): 51. Wo mei tian zao shang he yi bei niunai. (I drink a glass of milk every morning.) 52. Ta xihuan zai gongyuan pao bu. (He/she likes to run in the park.) 53. Wo tongchang qi dian ban chi zaofan. (I usually eat breakfast at 7:30.) 54. Wanshang wo xihuan kan shu. (In the evening I like to read.) 55. Zhoumo wo he pengyou qu kan dianying. (On weekends I go to movies with friends.) 56. Ta mei tian zuo gonggong qiche shang ban. (He/she takes the bus to work every day.) 57. Wo mama hui zuo hen hao chi de cai. (My mom can cook very delicious food.) 58. Wo xuyao mai yi xie shuiguo he shucai. (I need to buy some fruits and vegetables.) 59. Ta zhengzai ting yinyue. (He/she is listening to music.) 60. Wo jintian hen mang, meiyou shijian xiuxi. (I'm very busy today, no time to rest.) 61. Xiawu wo yao qu youju ji xin. (This afternoon I need to go to the post office to mail a letter.) 62. Ta mei tian duan lian yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she exercises one hour every day.) 63. Wo xihuan he pengyou liao tian. (I like chatting with friends.) 64.

Wanshang wo tongchang shi dian shui jiao. (I usually go to bed at 10 PM.) 65. Zaochen wo xian xi lian, ranhou shua ya. (In the morning I first wash my face, then brush teeth.) 66. Ta zhengzai zuo zuoye. (He/she is doing homework.) 67. Wo xuyao qu chaoshi mai dongxi. (I need to go to the supermarket to buy things.) 68. Ta xihuan zai jia kan dianshi. (He/she likes watching TV at home.) 69. Wo mei zhou qu yi ci tushuguan. (I go to the library once a week.) 70. Ta yijing chi wan fan le. (He/she already finished eating.) 71. Wo xiang xue zuo fan. (I want to learn to cook.) 72. Ta mei tian zou lu qu xuexiao. (He/she walks to school every day.) 73. Wo xuyao qu yinhang qu qian. (I need to go to the bank to withdraw money.) 74. Ta zhengzai he kafei. (He/she is drinking coffee.) 75. Wo xihuan zai zhoumo shui lan jiao. (I like sleeping in on weekends.) 76. Ta yao qu li fa. (He/she is going to get a haircut.) 77. Wo xuyao xi yifu. (I need to wash clothes.) 78. Ta zhengzai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.) 79. Wo xihuan zai wanshang san bu. (I like walking in the evening.) 80. Ta mei tian kan bao. (He/she reads the newspaper every day.) 81. Wo yao qu chaoshi mai shui. (I'm going to the supermarket to buy water.) 82. Ta xihuan zhou mo qu pa shan. (He/she likes hiking on weekends.) 83. Wo xuyao gei baba da ge dianhua. (I need to call dad.) 84. Ta zhengzai zhunbei kaoshi. (He/she is preparing for an exam.) 85. Wo xiang he yi bei re cha. (I want to drink a cup of hot tea.) 86. Ta mei tian wan shang du shu. (He/she reads every evening.) 87. Wo yao qu yaodian mai yao. (I'm going to the pharmacy to buy medicine.) 88. Ta xihuan zai jia ting yinyue. (He/she likes listening to music at home.) 89. Wo xuyao qu jiayou. (I need to go get gas.) 90. Ta zhengzai xue kai che. (He/she is learning to drive.) 91. Wo mei xingqi qu yi ci youyongguan. (I go to the swimming pool once a week.) 92. Ta xihuan zai zaoshang duan lian. (He/she likes exercising in the morning.) 93. Wo yao qu huazhuangpin dian. (I'm going to the cosmetics store.) 94.

Ta zhengzai zhao gongzuo. (He/she is looking for a job.) 95. Wo xiang qu lvyou. (I want to go traveling.) 96. Ta mei tian wan fan hou san bu. (He/she walks after dinner every day.) 97. Wo xuyao mai yi shuang xin xie. (I need to buy a new pair of shoes.) 98. Ta zhengzai xue Zhongwen. (He/she is studying Chinese.) 99. Wo xihuan zai xiatian youyong. (I like swimming in summer.) 100. Ta yao qu yiyuan kan yisheng. (He/she is going to the hospital to see a doctor.)

Travel and Places (101-150): 101. Wo qu guo Zhongguo san ci. (I've been to China three times.) 102. Beijing shi Zhongguo de shoudu. (Beijing is the capital of China.) 103. Wo xiang qu Changcheng. (I want to go to the Great Wall.) 104. Na ge chengshi hen piaoliang. (That city is very beautiful.) 105. Wo zhu zai shi zhongxin. (I live in the city center.) 106. Jichang li zheli yuan ma? (Is the airport far from here?) 107. Huochezhan zai nar? (Where is the train station?) 108. Wo xiang ding yi zhang qu Shanghai de piao. (I want to book a ticket to Shanghai.) 109. Zhe ge difang you hen duo mingsheng guji. (This place has many historical sites.) 110. Wo men ke yi zai nar zhao dao luguan? (Where can we find a hotel?) 111. Zhe tiao jie hen youming. (This street is very famous.) 112. Wo xiang qu bowuguan canguan. (I want to visit the museum.) 113. Na ge gongyuan hen da. (That park is very large.) 114. Wo xiang qu haitan. (I want to go to the beach.) 115. Zhe ge chengshi you hen hao de jiaotong. (This city has very good transportation.) 116. Wo men yao qu nali chi fan? (Where should we go to eat?) 117. Na ge fanguan hen youming. (That restaurant is very famous.) 118. Wo xiang qu dongwuyuan. (I want to go to the zoo.) 119. Zhe ge shangchang hen da. (This mall is very big.) 120. Wo xiang qu kan yinyuehui. (I want to go see a concert.) 121. Na ge jiudian hen gaoji. (That hotel is very upscale.) 122. Wo men keyi zou lu qu ma? (Can we walk there?) 123. Zhe tiao lu hen kuanqhuo. (This road is very

wide.) 124. Wo xiang zai zhe ge chengshi duo dai ji tian. (I want to stay in this city for a few more days.) 125. Na ge jingdian hen zhi de qu. (That scenic spot is worth visiting.) 126. Wo xuyao mai yi zhang ditu. (I need to buy a map.) 127. Zhe ge difang de fengjing hen mei. (The scenery of this place is very beautiful.) 128. Wo xiang qu shuizu guan. (I want to go to the aquarium.) 129. Na ge guangchang hen re nao. (That square is very lively.) 130. Wo men yao zai nar hui he? (Where should we meet?) 131. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gouwu zhongxin. (This city has many shopping centers.) 132. Wo xiang qu kafei guan zuo yi zuo. (I want to sit at a café.) 133. Na ge shanmai hen zhuanguan. (That mountain range is very magnificent.) 134. Wo xuyao zhao yi ge daoyou. (I need to find a tour guide.) 135. Zhe ge didian hen fangbian. (This location is very convenient.) 136. Wo xiang qu kua niao. (I want to go bird watching.) 137. Na ge hu bo hen pingjing. (That lake is very peaceful.) 138. Wo men keyi zai zheli pai zhao ma? (Can we take photos here?) 139. Zhe ge guojia you hen duo dao. (This country has many islands.) 140. Wo xiang qu de shi youji. (I want to go to the amusement park.) 141. Na tiao he liu jing zhe ge chengshi. (That river flows through this city.) 142. Wo xuyao huan qian. (I need to exchange money.) 143. Zhe ge jiedao you hen duo shangdian. (This street has many shops.) 144. Wo xiang qu shan shang kan richu. (I want to go up the mountain to see the sunrise.) 145. Na ge cunzhuang hen anjing. (That village is very quiet.) 146. Wo men yao zai nar xia che? (Where should we get off?) 147. Zhe ge haiguan zhan hen mang. (This customs station is very busy.) 148. Wo xiang qu kandao deng ta. (I want to go see the lighthouse.) 149. Na ge daoguo you hen chang de lishi. (That country has a very long history.) 150. Wo xuyao yuyue canguan. (I need to make a reservation to visit.)

Food and Dining (151-200): 151. Wo xihuan chi Zhongguo

cai. (I like eating Chinese food.) 152. Zhe dao cai tai la le. (This dish is too spicy.) 153. Qing gei wo yi shuang kuaizi. (Please give me a pair of chopsticks.) 154. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.) 155. Zhe ge cai hen haochi. (This dish is very delicious.) 156. Wo xiang dian yi ge tang. (I want to order a soup.) 157. Zhe ge fangguan de fuwu hen hao. (This restaurant's service is very good.) 158. Wo dui haoxian guo min. (I'm allergic to seafood.) 159. Qing shao fang dian yan. (Please use less salt.) 160. Wo xihuan tian de shiwa. (I like sweet food.) 161. Zhe bei cha tai tang le. (This tea is too hot.) 162. Wo yao yi ping kuangquan shui. (I want a bottle of mineral water.) 163. Zhe ge pingguo hen xin xian. (This apple is very fresh.) 164. Wo bu xihuan chi suan de. (I don't like eating sour things.) 165. Qing gei wo yi ge da wan. (Please give me a large bowl.) 166. Wo xiang chi dian qing dan de. (I want to eat something light.) 167. Zhe ge miantiao tai ruan le. (These noodles are too soft.) 168. Wo yao yi bei bing shui. (I want a glass of ice water.) 169. Zhe ge dangao hen tian. (This cake is very sweet.) 170. Wo bu neng chi la de. (I can't eat spicy food.) 171. Qing ba cai zai re yi xia. (Please reheat the food.) 172. Wo xiang chang yi xia zhe ge. (I want to taste this.) 173. Zhe ge yu hen xin xian. (This fish is very fresh.) 174. Wo xihuan he re cha. (I like drinking hot tea.) 175. Qing gei wo yi ge pan zi. (Please give me a plate.) 176. Wo bu xihuan ku de shiwa. (I don't like bitter food.) 177. Zhe ge mian bao hen ruan. (This bread is very soft.) 178. Wo yao yi bei xin xian guozhi. (I want a glass of fresh juice.) 179. Zhe ge zhu rou hen nen. (This pork is very tender.) 180. Wo xihuan chi shu cai. (I like eating vegetables.) 181. Qing gei wo yi ge cha dian. (Please give me a dessert.) 182. Wo bu he jiu. (I don't drink alcohol.) 183. Zhe ge tang hen xian. (This soup is very savory.) 184. Wo yao jia yi dian jiang. (I want to add some sauce.) 185. Zhe ge xigua hen tian. (This watermelon is very sweet.) 186. Wo xihuan chi sheng yu pian. (I like eating sashimi.) 187. Qing

bu yao fang cong. (Please don't put green onions.) 188. Wo bu neng chi hua sheng. (I can't eat peanuts.) 189. Zhe ge niu rou hen lao. (This beef is very tough.) 190. Wo xiang yao yi fen| ping | bottles | shi ping pijiu (ten bottles of beer) |

16.2 Time Expression Reference

Expression	Latinxua	Usage
now	xianzai	Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
today	jintian	Jintian hen re. (Today is very hot.)
yesterday	zuotian	Zuotian wo qu le Beijing. (Yesterday I went to Beijing.)
tomorrow	mingtian	Mingtian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
morning	zaoshang/ shangwu	Wo zaoshang liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 in the morning.)
afternoon	xiawu	Xiawu women you ke. (We have class in the afternoon.)
evening	wanshang	Wanshang wo zai jia. (In the evening I'm at home.)
last week	shang xingqi	Shang xingqi wo hen mang. (Last week I was very busy.)
next week	xia xingqi	Xia xingqi wo qu Shanghai. (Next week I'm going to Shanghai.)
last month	shang ge yue	Shang ge yue hen leng. (Last month was very cold.)
next month	xia ge yue	Xia ge yue shi wo de shengri. (Next month is my birthday.)
last year	qu nian	Qu nian wo zai Beijing. (Last year I was in Beijing.)
next year	ming nian	Ming nian wo bi ye. (Next year I graduate.)
this	zhe ge	Zhe ge xingqi wo you kong. (This

Expression	Latinxua	Usage
week	xingqi	week I'm free.)
this month	zhe ge yue	Zhe ge yue hen mang. (This month is very busy.)
this year	jin nian	Jin nian wo er shi sui. (This year I'm 20 years old.)

16.3 Question Word Summary

Question Word	Meaning	Example
shenme	what	Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
shei/shui	who	Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
nar/nali	where	Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
nage	which	Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
zenme	how	Zenme zou? (How to get there?)
zenmeyang	how, how about	Tianqi zenmeyang? (How's the weather?)
weishenme	why	Ni weishenme bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
ji	how many (< 10)	Ni you ji ge pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
duoshao	how many/much	Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
ji dian	what time	Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
ji yue	what month	Ni ji yue shengri? (What month is your birthday?)
ji hao	what date	Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)

Question Word	Meaning	Example
xingqi ji	what day	Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
duo da/ji sui	how old	Ni duo da? (How old are you?)
duo yuan	how far	Li zheli duo yuan? (How far from here?)
duo chang	how long	Zhe tiao lu duo chang? (How long is this road?)
duo jiu	how long (time)	Ni xue le duo jiu? (How long have you studied?)

16.4 Common Verbs Conjugation Patterns

Basic Pattern: Verb + Aspect Marker + Complement

Tense/Aspect	Pattern	Example
Simple Present	Subject + Verb	Wo chi fan. (I eat.)
Progressive	Subject + zai + Verb	Wo zai chi fan. (I am eating.)
Completed	Subject + Verb + le	Wo chi le fan. (I ate / have eaten.)
Experience	Subject + Verb + guo	Wo chi guo. (I have eaten [before].)
Future	Subject + yao/hui/xiang + Verb	Wo yao chi fan. (I will eat / I want to eat.)
Negative	Subject + bu + Verb	Wo bu chi fan. (I don't eat.)
Negative Past	Subject + mei(you) + Verb	Wo mei chi fan. (I didn't eat.)
Can/Abili	Subject +	Wo hui chi. (I can eat /

Tense/Aspect	Pattern	Example
ty	hui/neng/keyi + Verb	know how to eat.)
Must	Subject + dei/bixu/yinggai + Verb	Wo dei chi fan. (I must eat.)

16.5 Sentence Pattern Quick Reference

Pattern Type	Structure	Example
Basic Statement	S + V + O	Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
Adjective	S + hen + Adj	Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
"To be"	S + shi + N	Wo shi laoshi. (I am a teacher.)
Yes/No Question	S + V + O + ma?	Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
Wh-Question	Question Word + ...	Ni jiao shenme mingzi? (What's your name?)
Negative	S + bu/mei + V	Wo bu qu. (I'm not going.)
Possession	S + you + O	Wo you shu. (I have books.)
Location	S + zai + Place	Ta zai jia. (He/she is at home.)
Comparison	A + bi + B + Adj	Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
As...as	A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adj	Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I'm as tall as him/her.)
Superlative	S + zui + Adj	Ta zui gao. (He/she is the tallest.)
Modal	S + Modal + V	Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
Progressi	S + zai + V	Wo zai xuexiao. (I am

Pattern Type	Structure	Example
ve		studying.)
Completed	S + V + le	Wo chi le. (I ate.)
Experience	S + V + guo	Wo qu guo Beijing. (I've been to Beijing.)
Ba construction	S + ba + O + V + C	Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
Bei construction	S + bei + (Agent) + V	Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
Existential	Place + you + O	Zhuozi shang you shu. (There's a book on the table.)

Part 17: Extended Vocabulary by Theme

17.1 Business and Work Vocabulary

Company Structure:

- gongsi (company)
- qiye (enterprise)
- gongchang (factory)
- bangongshi (office)
- bumen (department)
- zong jingli (general manager)
- jing li (manager)
- zhuyuan (assistant)
- mishu (secretary)
- yuangong (employee)
- tongshi (colleague)

- laobao (boss)
- gu zhu (employer)
- shangsi (superior)
- xiashu (subordinate)

Business Activities:

- gongzuo (work)
- huiyi (meeting)
- xiangmu (project)
- jihua (plan)
- baogao (report)
- hetong (contract)
- yewu (business)
- maimai (trade, business)
- tanpan (negotiate)
- hezuo (cooperate)
- jingzheng (compete)
- fazhan (develop)
- guanli (manage)
- xiaoshou (sell, sales)
- yingxiao (marketing)
- guanggao (advertisement)
- kehu (client, customer)
- shichang (market)
- jiage (price)
- lirun (profit)
- chengben (cost)
- touzi (invest)
- shouru (income)
- zhichu (expense)
- yusuan (budget)
- caizheng (finance)

Work Activities:

- shangban (go to work)
- xiabian (get off work)
- jiaban (work overtime)
- qingjia (ask for leave)
- cizhi (resign)
- tuixiu (retire)
- zhaoping (recruit)
- peixun (train)
- shengzhi (promote)
- jiangzhi (demote)
- jiangong (pay salary)
- gongzi (salary, wage)
- jiangjin (bonus)
- fuli (welfare, benefits)

Documents:

- wenjian (document)
- ziliao (material, data)
- hetong (contract)
- xieyi (agreement)
- zhangdan (bill)
- fapiao (receipt, invoice)
- baogao (report)
- jihua (plan)
- tong zhi (notice)
- beiwanglu (memorandum)

17.2 Government and Politics

Government Terms:

- zhengfu (government)
- guojia (nation, country)

- sheng (province)
- shi (city)
- xian (county)
- cun (village)
- shoudu (capital)
- zhongyang (central [government])
- difang (local)
- guanyuan (official)
- lingdao (leader)
- zongli (premier)
- buzhang (minister)
- shizhang (mayor)
- jingcha (police)
- junren (military personnel)
- falü (law)
- fagui (regulation)
- zhengce (policy)
- minzhu (democracy)
- ziyou (freedom)
- quanli (right)
- yiwu (duty, obligation)
- xuanju (election)
- toua piao (vote)

17.3 Technology Terms

Computer:

- diannao (computer)
- yingjian (hardware)
- ruanjian (software)
- chengxu (program)
- yingyong (application)
- wenjian (file)

- wenjianjia (folder)
- shubiao (mouse)
- jianpan (keyboard)
- xianshiqi (monitor)
- dayinji (printer)
- saomiaoyi (scanner)
- yingpan (hard drive)
- neicun (memory)
- chulqi (processor)

Internet:

- hulianwang/wanglu (internet)
- wangzhan (website)
- wangye (webpage)
- liulanqi (browser)
- sousuoyinqing (search engine)
- dianzi youjian (email)
- wangshang (online)
- xiazai (download)
- shangchuan (upload)
- lianjie (link)
- zhanghu (account)
- mima (password)
- denglou (log in)
- tuichu (log out)
- shejiaoméiti (social media)

Mobile:

- shouji (mobile phone)
- zhinen shouji (smartphone)
- yingyong chengxu/APP (app)
- ping mu (screen)
- chu moping (touchscreen)

- dianchi (battery)
- chongdian (charge)
- haoma (phone number)
- duanxin (text message)
- dianhua (phone call)
- tonghua (call)

17.4 Medical Vocabulary Extended

Symptoms:

- zhengzhuang (symptom)
- teng (pain, ache)
- fashao (fever)
- kesou (cough)
- dati (sneeze)
- liubi (runny nose)
- touyun (dizzy)
- exin (nausea)
- outu (vomit)
- ladu zi (diarrhea)
- bianmi (constipation)
- shiwang (loss of appetite)
- pilao (fatigue)
- shuibuzhao (insomnia)
- pi zhen (rash)
- zhong (swelling)
- chu xue (bleeding)

Diseases:

- jibing (disease)
- ganmao (cold)
- liugan (flu)
- fayan (inflammation)

- gan ran (infection)
- guomin (allergy)
- aizheng (cancer)
- tangniaobing (diabetes)
- gaoxueya (high blood pressure)
- xinzangbing (heart disease)
- feiyan (pneumonia)
- weyan (gastritis)
- toufeng (headache disorder)
- guanjiayan (arthritis)

Treatment:

- zhiliao (treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- yaopian (pill)
- yaoshui (liquid medicine)
- zhushe (injection)
- shoushu (surgery)
- jianchá (examination)
- zhenduan (diagnosis)
- chufang (prescription)
- liao cheng (course of treatment)
- xiuxi (rest)
- yinshi (diet)
- duanlian (exercise)

Medical Facilities:

- yiyuan (hospital)
- zhensuo (clinic)
- yaodian (pharmacy)
- jizhenshi (emergency room)
- shoushushi (operating room)
- bingfang (patient room)

- menzheng (outpatient)
- zhu yuan (hospitalization)

17.5 Legal Vocabulary

Law Terms:

- falü (law)
- fagui (regulation)
- tiaoli (statute)
- hetong (contract)
- xieyi (agreement)
- quanli (right)
- yiwu (obligation)
- zeren (responsibility)
- fa yuan (court)
- faguai (judge)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jiancha yuan (prosecutor)
- zhengju (evidence)
- zhengre (witness)
- beigao (defendant)
- yuangao (plaintiff)
- panjue (verdict, judgment)
- chengfa (punishment)
- fajin (fine)
- jianyu (prison)
- fanzui (crime)
- weifa (illegal)
- heffa (legal)
- qiangdao (rob)
- tou (steal)
- pian (deceive, cheat)
- sharen (murder)

- baolli (violence)

17.6 Environmental Vocabulary

Environment:

- huanjing (environment)
- ziran (nature)
- shengtai (ecology)
- wuran (pollution)
- kongqi (air)
- shui (water)
- turang (soil)
- sen lin (forest)
- ye sheng dongwu (wildlife)
- baohu (protect)
- huanbao (environmental protection)
- kechixu (sustainable)
- ziyuan (resource)
- nengyuan (energy)
- taiyangnen (solar energy)
- fengneng (wind energy)
- qingjienengyuan (clean energy)
- huashiran liao (fossil fuel)
- meitan (coal)
- shiyou (petroleum)
- tianranqi (natural gas)
- dianli (electricity)
- lasui (garbage, trash)
- huishou (recycle)
- jian shao (reduce)
- zaiyong (reuse)

Climate:

- qihou (climate)
- quanqiu biannuan (global warming)
- qihou bianhhua (climate change)
- wenshi qiti (greenhouse gas)
- eryanghutian (carbon dioxide)
- wen du (temperature)
- qiwen (air temperature)
- shuiwen (water temperature)
- hanwu (drought)
- hongshui (flood)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- dizhen (earthquake)
- haixiao (tsunami)
- shanlin huozai (forest fire)

17.7 Academic Subjects Extended

Natural Sciences:

- kexue (science)
- wuli (physics)
- huaxue (chemistry)
- shengwu (biology)
- tianwenxue (astronomy)
- diliuxue (geology)
- qixiangxue (meteorology)
- haiyang xue (oceanography)
- shengwu kexue (life sciences)
- huanjing kexue (environmental science)

Social Sciences:

- shehui kexue (social science)
- lishi (history)
- dili (geography)

- zhengzhixue (political science)
- jingjixue (economics)
- shehuixue (sociology)
- renleaxue (anthropology)
- xinlixue (psychology)
- jiaoyu xue (education)
- chuanboxue (communication studies)

Humanities:

- renwen (humanities)
- wenxue (literature)
- zhexue (philosophy)
- yuyanxue (linguistics)
- yishu (art)
- yinyue (music)
- xiju (drama)
- dianying (film)
- zongjiao (religion)
- kaoguxue (archaeology)

Professional Studies:

- yixue (medicine)
- falü (law)
- gongcheng (engineering)
- jianzhu (architecture)
- shangye (business)
- guanli (management)
- kuaiji (accounting)
- jisuanji kexue (computer science)
- xinxiji shu (information technology)
- nongyue (agriculture)

17.8 Sports and Fitness Extended

Team Sports:

- zuqiu (soccer/football)
- lanqiu (basketball)
- paiqiu (volleyball)
- bangqiu (baseball)
- ganlanqiu (rugby/American football)
- bingqiu (ice hockey)
- shou qiu (handball)
- shui qiu (water polo)

Individual Sports:

- youyong (swimming)
- tianshu (track and field)
- paobu (running)
- tiaoyuan (long jump)
- tiaogao (high jump)
- reng biaoqiang (javelin throw)
- tijian (shot put)
- matarsung (marathon)

Racket Sports:

- wangqiu (tennis)
- pingpangqiu (table tennis)
- yumao qiu (badminton)
- biqu (squash)

Water Sports:

- chonglong (surfing)
- fanzhuan (sailing)
- huaxue (water skiing)
- qian shui (diving)
- pifa ting (kayaking)

Winter Sports:

- huaxue (skiing)
- huabing (ice skating)
- xuequiao (snowboarding)
- binghu (curling)

Martial Arts:

- wushu (martial arts)
- taijiquan (Tai Chi)
- gongfu (kung fu)
- judao (judo)
- taiquandao (taekwondo)
- kongshoudao (karate)
- quanji (boxing)
- jiaodou (wrestling)

Fitness:

- jiansheng (fitness)
- jianmei (bodybuilding)
- ti cao (gymnastics)
- yujia (yoga)
- pula ti (Pilates)
- xin fei gongne (cardio)
- liliang xunlian (strength training)
- lashen (stretching)
- re shen (warm-up)
- fangsong (cool down)

17.9 Arts and Entertainment

Visual Arts:

- huahua (painting)
- sumo (drawing)
- diaoso (sculpture)

- sheyeng (photography)
- sheji (design)
- shuzishu (digital art)
- shufa (calligraphy)
- taoci (ceramics/pottery)
- banhua (printmaking)

Performing Arts:

- biaoyan (performance)
- xiju (theater/drama)
- wudao (dance)
- bale wu (ballet)
- xiandai wu (modern dance)
- minjian wu (folk dance)
- gejiu (opera - general)
- jingju (Beijing opera)
- xiangsheng (crosstalk comedy)
- zajii (acrobatics)
- mosu (magic)

Music:

- yinyue (music)
- gegu (song)
- changpian (album)
- yueqi (musical instrument)
- gangqin (piano)
- xiaotiqen (violin)
- jita (guitar)
- guzheng (guzheng, Chinese zither)
- erhu (erhu, Chinese fiddle)
- pipa (pipa, Chinese lute)
- dizi (bamboo flute)
- gu (drum)

- chuidi yunyue (wind music)
- xianyue (string music)
- hechang (chorus, choir)
- yuedui (band)
- guanxian yue tuan (orchestra)

Film and TV:

- dianying (movie, film)
- dianshi (television)
- jiemu (program)
- lianzuxu ju (TV series)
- jilu pian (documentary)
- donghua pian (animated film)
- xiju (comedy)
- beiju (tragedy)
- dongzuo pian (action film)
- aiqing pian (romance film)
- kehuan pian (science fiction film)
- kongbu pian (horror film)
- daoyuan (director)
- bianju (screenwriter)
- yanyuan (actor/actress)
- mingxing (star, celebrity)
- juben (script)
- paishi (shoot/film)
- jinji (editing)

Literature:

- wenxue (literature)
- shi (poetry)
- xiaoshuo (novel)
- duanpian (short story)
- sarnwan (essay)

- xiju (drama/play)
- tonghua (fairy tale)
- zhua ji (biography)
- zuojia (writer, author)
- shiren (poet)
- pinglun (critique, review)

Part 18: Useful Phrases for Different Situations

18.1 At the Airport

1. Wo yao ban li dengji shouxu. (I want to check in.)
2. Wo de hangban hao shi... (My flight number is...)
3. Wo you liang jian xing li. (I have two pieces of luggage.)
4. Wo xiang yao kao chuang hu de weizhi. (I'd like a window seat.)
5. Dengji men zai nar? (Where is the boarding gate?)
6. Feiji ji dian qi fei? (What time does the plane take off?)
7. Wo de xing li diu le. (My luggage is lost.)
8. Zhe shi wo de dengji pai. (This is my boarding pass.)
9. Wo xuyao zhuan ji. (I need to transfer.)
10. Haiguan zai nar? (Where is customs?)

18.2 At the Hotel

1. Wo ding le yi ge fang jian. (I booked a room.)
2. Wo de yuding hao shi... (My reservation number is...)
3. Wo xiang ru zhu. (I'd like to check in.)
4. Wo xiang tui fang. (I'd like to check out.)
5. You mei you wifi? (Is there wifi?)
6. Wifi mima shi shenme? (What's the wifi password?)
7. Wo de fang jian xuyao qing jie. (My room needs cleaning.)
8. Kong tiao bu neng yong. (The air conditioning doesn't

work.)
9. Ke yi huan fang jian ma? (Can I change rooms?)
10. Fang jian li you bingxiang ma? (Is there a refrigerator in the room?)
11. Ji dian chi zao fan? (What time is breakfast?)
12. Zao can zai nar? (Where is breakfast?)
13. Qing bang wo jiao yi liang chu zu che. (Please call me a taxi.)
14. You mei you xi yi fu wu? (Is there laundry service?)
15. Wo xiang yan chang yi tian. (I'd like to extend for one day.)

18.3 At the Restaurant (Extended)

1. You kong weizhi ma? (Do you have available seats?)
2. Wo yao ding yi zhang zhuo. (I want to reserve a table.)
3. Qing gei wo kan cai dan. (Please give me the menu.)
4. You mei you Yingwen cai dan? (Do you have an English menu?)
5. Jin tian de tecan shi shenme? (What's today's special?)
6. Ni men tui jian shenme? (What do you recommend?)
7. Wo dui... guo min. (I'm allergic to...)
8. Bu yao tai la. (Not too spicy.)
9. Wo chi su. (I'm vegetarian.)
10. Qing lai yi hu cha. (Please bring a pot of tea.)
11. Qing bang wo yi xia cai dan. (Please repeat the menu.)
12. Hai xu yao deng duo jiu? (How much longer do we need to wait?)
13. Zhe dao cai tai xian le. (This dish is too salty.)
14. Zhe bu shi wo dian de. (This is not what I ordered.)
15. Qing ba zhe ge da bao. (Please pack this to go.)
16. Mai dan! (Check please!)
17. Wo qing ke. (It's my treat.)
18. Women fenkai fu qian. (Let's split the bill.)
19. Qing kai fapiao. (Please give me a receipt.)

20.Fu wu hen hao! (The service was great!)

18.4 Shopping Phrases (Extended)

1.Wo ke yi kan yi xia ma? (May I take a look?)
2.You mei you bie de yan se? (Do you have other colors?)
3.You mei you xiao yi hao de? (Do you have a smaller size?)
4.You mei you da yi hao de? (Do you have a larger size?)
5.Wo chuan duo da hao? (What size do I wear?)
6.Zhe ge shi shenme cailiao? (What material is this?)
7.Ke yi shi chuan ma? (Can I try it on?)
8.Shi yi jian zai nar? (Where is the fitting room?)
9.Zhe ge tai xiao le. (This is too small.)
10.Zhe ge tai da le. (This is too big.)
11.Hen he shen! (It fits well!)
12.Wo bu tai xi huan. (I don't really like it.)
13.Wo zai kao lü kao lü. (Let me think about it.)
14.Duo shao qian? (How much?)
15.Tai gui le! (Too expensive!)
16.Neng pian yi yi dian ma? (Can it be cheaper?)
17.Zui di jia shi duo shao? (What's the lowest price?)
18.Wo yao zhe ge. (I'll take this.)
19.Yong xian jin hai shi shua ka? (Cash or card?)
20.Ke yi tui huo ma? (Can I return it?)
21.You bao xiu ma? (Is there a warranty?)
22.Qing bang wo bao zhuang. (Please wrap it for me.)
23.Zhe shi song ren de. (This is a gift.)
24.Qing gei wo shouju. (Please give me a receipt.)
25.Xie xie! Zai jian! (Thank you! Goodbye!)

18.5 At the Doctor's Office

1.Wo bu shu fu. (I don't feel well.)
2.Wo sheng bing le. (I'm sick.)

3.Wo tou teng. (I have a headache.)
4.Wo du zi teng. (I have a stomachache.)
5.Wo ke sou. (I'm coughing.)
6.Wo fa shao. (I have a fever.)
7.Wo gan mao le. (I have a cold.)
8.Wo la du zi. (I have diarrhea.)
9.Wo gan jue e xin. (I feel nauseous.)
10.Wo mei you wei kou. (I have no appetite.)
11.Wo shui bu hao. (I can't sleep well.)
12.Wo han chu le. (I broke out in a rash.)
13.Wo dui... guo min. (I'm allergic to...)
14.Wo zai chi yao. (I'm taking medication.)
15.Wo zhe li teng. (It hurts here.)
16.Cong shen me shi hou kai shi de? (When did it start?)
17.Teng de li hai ma? (Does it hurt badly?)
18.Ni yao zuo jian cha. (You need to have an examination.)
19.Wo yao kai yao gei ni. (I'll prescribe medicine for you.)
20.Mei tian chi san ci, yi ci yi pian. (Take three times a day, one pill each time.)

18.6 Emergency Phrases

1.Jiu ming! (Help! / Save me!)
2.Qing bang bang wo! (Please help me!)
3.Chu shi le! (There's an accident!)
4.Kuai jiao jing cha! (Quickly call the police!)
5.Kuai jiao jiu hu che! (Quickly call an ambulance!)
6.Zhao huo le! (There's a fire!)
7.You ren shou shang le! (Someone is injured!)
8.Wo mi lu le. (I'm lost.)
9.Wo de qian bao bei tou le. (My wallet was stolen.)
10.Wo bei qiang le. (I was robbed.)
11.Wo xu yao bang zhu! (I need help!)
12.Zhe shi jin ji qing kuang! (This is an emergency!)
13.Qing dai wo qu yi yuan! (Please take me to the

hospital!)
14. Wo yao bao jing. (I want to report to the police.)
15. You mei you ren hui shuo Ying wen? (Does anyone speak English?)

18.7 At the Bank

1. Wo xiang kai hu. (I want to open an account.)
2. Wo xiang cun qian. (I want to deposit money.)
3. Wo xiang qu qian. (I want to withdraw money.)
4. Wo xiang huan qian. (I want to exchange money.)
5. Jin tian de hui lü shi duo shao? (What's today's exchange rate?)
6. Wo xiang ban yi zhang xin yong ka. (I want to apply for a credit card.)
7. Wo de ka bei tun le. (My card was swallowed [by the ATM].)
8. Wo wang ji mi ma le. (I forgot my password.)
9. Wo xiang cha zhang hu. (I want to check my balance.)
10. Wo xiang zhuan zhang. (I want to transfer money.)
11. You shou xu fei ma? (Is there a service fee?)
12. Qing gei wo xiao piao. (Please give me a receipt.)
13. Qu kuan ji zai nar? (Where is the ATM?)
14. Yin hang ji dian kai men? (What time does the bank open?)
15. Yin hang ji dian guan men? (What time does the bank close?)

Conclusion

Final Notes on Latinxua Usage

This comprehensive guide to Latinxua (Latin Script Chinese) has covered:

1. **Phonology and Orthography** - The sound system and spelling conventions
2. **Basic Grammar** - Word order, pronouns, questions, and basic sentence patterns
3. **Verbs and Aspects** - Action words, tenses, and grammatical markers
4. **Nouns and Classifiers** - Naming words and measure words
5. **Adjectives and Adverbs** - Descriptive words and modifiers
6. **Prepositions and Location** - Spatial relationships and position words 7.A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where do you live?) B: Wo zhu zai Beijing. (I live in Beijing.) A: Ni zuo shen me gong zuo? (What do you do for work?) B: Wo shi laoshi. Ni ne? (I'm a teacher. And you?) A: Wo shi xue sheng. Wo zai xue Zhong wen. (I'm a student. I'm studying Chinese.) B: Ni de Zhong wen shuo de hen hao! (Your Chinese is very good!) A: Xie xie! Dan shi wo hai xu yao duo lian xi. (Thank you! But I still need more practice.)

Dialogue 2: At a Coffee Shop

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ni xiang he dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to drink?) B: Qing gei wo yi bei re ka fei. (Please give me a cup of hot coffee.) A: Hao de. Yao bu yao tang he nai? (Okay. Do you want sugar and milk?) B: Zhi yao nai, bu yao tang. (Just milk, no sugar.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Hai yao yi ge san ming zhi. (I also want a sandwich.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) B: Yi gong duo shao qian? (How much in total?) A: Yi gong san shi wu kuai. (35 yuan in total.) B: Zhe shi wu shi kuai. (Here's 50 yuan.) A: Zhao ni shi wu kuai. Xie xie! (Here's your 15 yuan change. Thank you!)

12.2 Daily Conversations

Dialogue 3: Talking About Weather

A: Jin tian tian qi zen me yang? (How's the weather today?) B: Jin tian tian qi hen hao, yang guang ming mei. (The weather is great today, sunny and bright.) A: Shi a, hen shi he chu qu san bu. (Yes, very suitable for going out for a walk.) B: Ming tian hui xia yu ma? (Will it rain tomorrow?) A: Ting shuo ming tian hui xia yu. (I heard it will rain tomorrow.) B: Na wo men zui hao dai san. (Then we'd better bring umbrellas.) A: Ni xi huan shen me ji jie? (What season do you like?) B: Wo zui xi huan qiu tian, bu re ye bu leng. (I like autumn best, not hot and not cold.) A: Wo ye shi! Qiu tian de tian qi zui shu fu. (Me too! Autumn weather is the most comfortable.)

Dialogue 4: Making Plans

A: Zhou mo ni you kong ma? (Are you free this weekend?) B: You a, ni you shen me ji hua? (Yes, do you have any plans?) A: Wo men qu pa shan ba! (Let's go hiking!) B: Hao zhu yi! Ji dian chu fa? (Good idea! What time should we leave?) A: Zao shang ba dian zen me yang? (How about 8 o'clock in the morning?) B: Tai zao le ba. Shi dian hao ma? (That's too early. Is 10 o'clock okay?) A: Hao de. Wo men zai di tie zhan jian mian. (Okay. Let's meet at the subway station.) B: Xu yao dai shen me? (What do we need to bring?) A: Dai shui he yi dian chi de. (Bring water and some snacks.) B: Hao de. Na zhou liu jian! (Okay. See you Saturday!) A: Zhou liu jian! (See you Saturday!)

12.3 Shopping Dialogues

Dialogue 5: Buying Clothes

A: Huan ying guang lin! Xu yao bang mang ma? (Welcome! Do you need help?) B: Wo xiang kan yi xia yi fu. (I'd like to look at clothes.) A: Ni xi huan shen me yan se? (What color

do you like?) B: Wo xi huan lan se de. (I like blue.) A: Zhe jian lan se de chen shan zen me yang? (How about this blue shirt?) B: Hen hao kan. Duo shao qian? (Very nice. How much is it?) A: Yi bai ba shi kuai. (180 yuan.) B: Tai gui le! Neng bu neng pian yi yi dian? (Too expensive! Can it be cheaper?) A: Xian zai zheng zai da zhe, jiu zhe ge jia ge. (It's on sale now, this is the price.) B: Wo ke yi shi chuan ma? (Can I try it on?) A: Dang ran ke yi. Shi yi jian zai na bian. (Of course. The fitting room is over there.) B: Xie xie! (Thank you!)

Dialogue 6: At the Market

A: Zhe ge pin guo duo shao qian yi jin? (How much is this apple per jin?) B: Wu kuai yi jin. (5 yuan per jin.) A: Tai gui le! Si kuai zen me yang? (Too expensive! How about 4 yuan?) B: Bu xing! Zui di si kuai wu. (No way! Lowest is 4.5 yuan.) A: Hao ba. Gei wo liang jin. (Okay. Give me two jin.) B: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) A: Zhe ge ju zi zen me mai? (How do you sell these oranges?) B: Liu kuai yi jin. (6 yuan per jin.) A: Gei wo yi jin ba. (Give me one jin.) B: Hao de. Yi gong shi wu kuai wu. (Okay. 15.5 yuan in total.) A: Zhe shi er shi kuai. (Here's 20 yuan.) B: Zhao ni si kuai wu. (Your change is 4.5 yuan.)

12.4 Travel and Directions

Dialogue 7: Asking for Directions

A: Qing wen, qu huo che zhan zen me zou? (Excuse me, how do I get to the train station?) B: Ni ke yi zuo di tie huo zhe gong gong qi che. (You can take the subway or bus.) A: Zuo di tie yuan bu yuan? (Is it far by subway?) B: Bu yuan, zhi you liang zhan. (Not far, only two stops.) A: Di tie zhan zai nar? (Where is the subway station?) B: Yi zhi zou, zai di er ge lu kou xiang zuo guai. (Go straight, turn left at the second intersection.) A: Duo chang shi jian neng dao? (How long does it take to get there?) B: Da gai shi fen zhong.

(About 10 minutes.) A: Xie xie ni! (Thank you!) B: Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)

Dialogue 8: At the Hotel

A: Ni hao! Wo xiang ding yi ge fang jian. (Hello! I'd like to book a room.) B: Hao de. Nin yao dan ren jian hai shi shuang ren jian? (Okay. Do you want a single or double room?) A: Shuang ren jian. (Double room.) B: Zhu ji tian? (How many days will you stay?) A: San tian. (Three days.) B: San tian de hua shi liu bai kuai. (For three days it's 600 yuan.) A: Bao kuo zao can ma? (Does it include breakfast?) B: Dui, bao kuo zao can. (Yes, breakfast is included.) A: Hao de. Wo ding le. (Okay. I'll take it.) B: Qing gei wo kan yi xia nin de shen fen zheng. (Please let me see your ID.) A: Gei ni. (Here you are.) B: Hao de. Zhe shi nin de fang jian yao shi. (Okay. Here's your room key.)

12.5 Restaurant Conversations

Dialogue 9: Ordering Food

A: Huan ying guang lin! Ji wei? (Welcome! How many people?) B: Liang wei. (Two people.) A: Hao de, qing zhe bian zou. (Okay, this way please.) B: Xie xie. Wo men kan yi xia cai dan. (Thank you. Let's look at the menu.) A: Hao de. Xiang he dian shen me? (Okay. What would you like to drink?) B: Liang bei cha. (Two cups of tea.) A: Hao de. Zhun bei hao dian cai le ma? (Okay. Ready to order?) B: Lai yi ge gong bao ji ding, yi ge ma po dou fu. (We'll have kung pao chicken and mapo tofu.) A: Hao de. Hai yao bie de ma? (Okay. Anything else?) B: Zai lai yi wan fan. (Also a bowl of rice.) A: Hao de. Qing shao deng. (Okay. Please wait a moment.) [After eating] B: Mai dan! (Check please!) A: Yi gong ba shi kuai. (80 yuan in total.) B: Ke yi shua ka ma? (Can I pay by card?) A: Ke yi de. (Yes, you can.)

Dialogue 10: At a Fast Food Restaurant

A: Huan ying guang lin! Nin yao dian shen me? (Welcome! What would you like to order?) B: Wo yao yi ge han bao bao, yi fen shu tiao. (I want a hamburger and French fries.) A: Hao de. Yao shen me yin liao? (Okay. What drink?) B: Yi bei ke le. (A cola.) A: Yao da bei hai shi xiao bei? (Large or small?) B: Zhong bei. (Medium.) A: Zai zhe li chi hai shi dai zou? (Eat here or take away?) B: Zai zhe li chi. (Eat here.) A: Hao de. Yi gong san shi er kuai. (Okay. 32 yuan in total.) B: Gei ni. (Here you are.) A: Zhao nin ba kuai. Qing na hao xiao piao. (Your change is 8 yuan. Please keep your receipt.)

12.6 At Work/School

Dialogue 11: Talking with Colleagues

A: Zao shang hao! (Good morning!) B: Zao! Zuo wan shui de hao ma? (Morning! Did you sleep well last night?) A: Bu tai hao. Jia ban dao hen wan. (Not very well. Worked overtime until late.) B: Tai xin ku le! Jin tian mang ma? (That's tough! Are you busy today?) A: Hai hao. Zhong wu yi qi chi fan ma? (Not too bad. Shall we have lunch together at noon?) B: Hao a! Ji dian qu? (Sure! What time?) A: Shi er dian ban zen me yang? (How about 12:30?) B: Mei wen ti. Na shi hou jian. (No problem. See you then.)

Dialogue 12: Student-Teacher Conversation

A: Lao shi, wo you yi ge wen ti. (Teacher, I have a question.) B: Hao de, shen me wen ti? (Okay, what question?) A: Wo bu dong zhe ge zi zen me xie. (I don't understand how to write this character.) B: Rang wo kan kan. Zhe ge zi shi zhe yang xie de. (Let me see. This character is written like this.) A: Wo ming bai le. Xie xie lao shi! (I understand now. Thank you, teacher!) B: Bu ke qi. Hai you bie de wen ti ma? (You're welcome. Any other questions?) A: Mei you le. (No more.) B: Hao de. Ni yao duo lian xi. (Okay. You need to practice more.) A: Wo hui de. (I will.)

Part 13: Cultural Notes and Expressions

13.1 Chinese Idioms and Sayings (Chengyu)

Common Four-Character Idioms:

1. **yi ju liang de** (一举两得) - yi ju liang de Meaning: Kill two birds with one stone Example: Zhe yang zuo ke yi yi ju liang de. (Doing this can kill two birds with one stone.)
2. **ban tu er fei** (半途而废) - ban tu er fei Meaning: Give up halfway Example: Wo men bu neng ban tu er fei. (We cannot give up halfway.)
3. **shui luo shi chu** (水落石出) - shui luo shi chu Meaning: The truth comes out (literally: water recedes, stones appear) Example: Zhen xiang zong hui shui luo shi chu. (The truth will eventually come out.)
4. **yi xin yi yi** (一心一意) - yi xin yi yi Meaning: Wholeheartedly, with single-minded devotion Example: Ta yi xin yi yi de xue xi. (He/she studies wholeheartedly.)
5. **san xin er yi** (三心二意) - san xin er yi Meaning: Half-hearted, of two minds Example: Bu yao san xin er yi. (Don't be half-hearted.)
6. **xin kou ru yi** (心口如一) - xin kou ru yi Meaning: Say what one thinks (literally: heart and mouth as one) Example: Ta shi ge xin kou ru yi de ren. (He/she is a person who says what they think.)
7. **yi yan jiu ding** (一言九鼎) - yi yan jiu ding Meaning: A word carries weight (literally: one word, nine cauldrons) Example: Ta shuo hua yi yan jiu ding. (His/her word carries great weight.)
8. **hua long dian jing** (画龙点睛) - hua long dian jing Meaning: Add the finishing touch Example: Zhe ju hua qi

dao hua long dian jing de zuo yong. (This sentence adds the finishing touch.)

9. **sai weng shi ma** (塞翁失马) - sai weng shi ma Meaning: A blessing in disguise Example: Sai weng shi ma, yan zhi fei fu. (Losing the horse - who knows if it's a blessing or curse.)
10. **bu gong zi po** (不攻自破) - bu gong zi po Meaning: Collapse without being attacked (of a false argument) Example: Zhe ge shuo fa bu gong zi po. (This argument collapses on its own.)

13.2 Common Proverbs

1. **Shi jian jiu shi jin qian.** (时间就是金钱。) Time is money.
2. **Shi jian bu deng ren.** (时间不等人。) Time waits for no one.
3. **Shui jiao zao qi shen ti hao.** (睡觉早起身体好。) Early to bed and early to rise makes one healthy.
4. **Hao hao xue xi, tian tian xiang shang.** (好好学习，天天向上。) Study well and make progress every day.
5. **Yi fen geng yun, yi fen shou huo.** (一分耕耘，一分收获。) You reap what you sow.
6. **Shi bai shi cheng gong zhi mu.** (失败是成功之母。) Failure is the mother of success.
7. **Lao shi shi fu mu.** (老师是父母。) Teachers are like parents.
8. **You peng zi yuan fang lai, bu yi le hu?** (有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎？) Isn't it delightful to have friends come from afar?
9. **Tiao zao de niao er you chong chi.** (早起的鸟儿有虫吃。) The early bird catches the worm.
10. **Yi ge hao han san ge bang.** (一个好汉三个帮。) Even a

hero needs help from others.

13.3 Festive Greetings

Chinese New Year:

- Xin nian kuai le! (新年快乐！) - Happy New Year!
- Gong xi fa cai! (恭喜发财！) - Wishing you prosperity!
- Wan shi ru yi! (万事如意！) - May all your wishes come true!
- Shen ti jian kang! (身体健康！) - Good health!

Other Holidays:

- Sheng dan kuai le! (圣诞快乐！) - Merry Christmas!
- Sheng ri kuai le! (生日快乐！) - Happy Birthday!
- Jie ri kuai le! (节日快乐！) - Happy Holidays!
- Zhong qiu jie kuai le! (中秋节快乐！) - Happy Mid-Autumn Festival!

13.4 Terms of Address

Family Terms:

- Baba/Die (爸爸/爹) - Father, Dad
- Mama/Niang (妈妈/娘) - Mother, Mom
- Gege (哥哥) - Older brother
- Jiejie (姐姐) - Older sister
- Didi (弟弟) - Younger brother
- Meimei (妹妹) - Younger sister
- Yeye (爷爷) - Paternal grandfather
- Nainai (奶奶) - Paternal grandmother
- Waigong (外公) - Maternal grandfather
- Waipo (外婆) - Maternal grandmother

Respectful Terms:

- Xiansheng (先生) - Mr., Sir, gentleman
- Nüshi/Xiaojie (女士/小姐) - Ms., Miss, lady

- Laoshi (老师) - Teacher (also used respectfully)
- Shifu (师傅) - Master (for skilled workers)
- Tongzhi (同志) - Comrade (less common now)

Part 14: Practice Exercises and Examples

14.1 Fill in the Blank Exercises

Exercise Set 1: Basic Sentences

1. Wo ____ xuesheng. (I am a student.) [Answer: shi]
2. Ta hen ____. (She is very tall.) [Answer: gao]
3. Wo men ____ qu Beijing. (We want to go to Beijing.) [Answer: xiang]
4. Ni ____ shenme? (What do you like?) [Answer: xihuan]
5. Jintian ____ hen hao. (The weather is very good today.) [Answer: tianqi]
6. Wo ____ liang ge pengyou. (I have two friends.) [Answer: you]
7. Ta zai ____ shu. (He/she is reading a book.) [Answer: kan]
8. Zhe ____ wo de. (This is mine.) [Answer: shi]
9. Ni zhu zai ____? (Where do you live?) [Answer: nar]
10. Wo ____ Zhongwen. (I study Chinese.) [Answer: xue]

Exercise Set 2: Time Expressions

1. Jintian ____ ji? (What day is today?) [Answer: xingqi]
2. Xianzai ____ dian? (What time is it now?) [Answer: ji]
3. Wo ____ qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.) [Answer: liu dian]
4. ____ tian wo qu Beijing. (Yesterday I went to Beijing.) [Answer: Zuo]
5. ____ tian wo yao qu Shanghai. (Tomorrow I'm going to Shanghai.) [Answer: Ming]
6. Wo ____ xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I've studied

Chinese for three years.) [Answer: yijing]
7. Ta ____ lai le. (He/she just came.) [Answer: gang]
8. Qing ____ deng. (Please wait a moment.) [Answer: shao]
9. Wo ____ chi fan le. (I already ate.) [Answer: yijing]
10. Ta ____ mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.) [Answer: hai]

14.2 Translation Exercises

English to Latinxua:

1. I like to drink tea. → Wo xihuan he cha.
2. He is my teacher. → Ta shi wo de laoshi.
3. Where is the library? → Tushuguan zai nar?
4. This book is very interesting. → Zhe ben shu hen youyisi.
5. Can you speak Chinese? → Ni hui shuo Zhongwen ma?
6. I want to buy a ticket. → Wo yao mai piao.
7. The weather is very cold today. → Jintian tianqi hen leng.
8. We are going to watch a movie. → Women qu kan dianying.
9. She has three cats. → Ta you san zhi mao.
10. How much does this cost? → Zhe ge duo shao qian?
11. I don't understand. → Wo bu dong.
12. Please speak slowly. → Qing shuo man yi dian.
13. What time do you get up? → Ni ji dian qi chuang?
14. I live in Beijing. → Wo zhu zai Beijing.
15. He is taller than me. → Ta bi wo gao.

Latinxua to English:

1. Wo yao yi bei kafei. → I want a cup of coffee.
2. Ta hen congming. → He/she is very smart.
3. Ni qu nar? → Where are you going?
4. Wo bu xihuan chi la de. → I don't like to eat spicy food.

5. Zhe shi wo de pengyou. → This is my friend.
6. Ni hui shuo Yingwen ma? → Can you speak English?
7. Wo mei tian zao shang liu dian qi chuang. → I get up at 6 AM every morning.
8. Ta zai xuexiao gongzuo. → He/she works at school.
9. Zhe ge tai gui le. → This is too expensive.
10. Women qu gongyuan ba! → Let's go to the park!
11. Ni you xiongdi jiemei ma? → Do you have siblings?
12. Wo bu hui youyong. → I don't know how to swim.
13. Jintian xingqi ji? → What day is today?
14. Ta zai zuo shenme? → What is he/she doing?
15. Wo yijing chi le. → I already ate.

14.3 Sentence Building Practice

Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

1. Wo (I) + chi (eat) + fan (rice) → Wo chi fan. (I eat rice.)
2. Ta (He/she) + kan (watch) + dianshi (TV) → Ta kan dianshi. (He/she watches TV.)
3. Women (We) + xue (study) + Yingwen (English) → Women xue Yingwen. (We study English.)
4. Nimen (You pl.) + he (drink) + cha (tea) → Nimen he cha. (You drink tea.)
5. Tamen (They) + mai (buy) + shu (books) → Tamen mai shu. (They buy books.)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

1. Tianqi (weather) + hen hao (very good) → Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge (this) + hen gui (very expensive) → Zhe ge hen gui. (This is very expensive.)
3. Ta (he/she) + hen piaoliang (very beautiful) → Ta hen piaoliang. (He/she is very beautiful.)
4. Wo (I) + hen lei (very tired) → Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
5. Fangzi (house) + hen da (very big) → Fangzi hen da.

(The house is very big.)

Pattern: Question with "ma"

1. Ni shi xuesheng. → Ni shi xuesheng ma? (Are you a student?)
2. Ta xihuan kafei. → Ta xihuan kafei ma? (Does he/she like coffee?)
3. Ni qu Beijing. → Ni qu Beijing ma? (Are you going to Beijing?)
4. Tianqi hao. → Tianqi hao ma? (Is the weather good?)
5. Ni you shijian. → Ni you shijian ma? (Do you have time?)

14.4 Reading Comprehension Passages

Passage 1: Self-Introduction

Wo jiao Zhang Wei. Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Wo jin nian er shi wu sui. Wo shi yi ge laoshi. Wo zai yi suo xiao xue gongzuo. Wo hen xihuan wo de gongzuo. Wo you yi ge xing fu de jiating. Wo you yi ge qizi he yi ge nüer. Wo de qizi shi yisheng. Wo de nüer jin nian wu sui. Wo men zhu zai Beijing. Wo xihuan du shu he yundong. Wo mei tian zou bu shang ban. Zhou mo wo chang chang gen jiaren yi qi qu gongyuan.

Questions:

1. Zhang Wei zuo shenme gongzuo? (What is Zhang Wei's job?) - Ta shi laoshi. (He is a teacher.)
2. Ta ji sui? (How old is he?) - Ta er shi wu sui. (He is 25 years old.)
3. Ta de qizi zuo shenme? (What does his wife do?) - Ta de qizi shi yisheng. (His wife is a doctor.)
4. Ta men zhu zai nar? (Where do they live?) - Ta men zhu zai Beijing. (They live in Beijing.)
5. Ta xi huan zuo shenme? (What does he like to do?) - Ta xihuan du shu he yundong. (He likes reading and

exercising.)

Passage 2: A Day at School

Jin tian shi xing qi yi. Wo zao shang qi dian qi chuang. Wo xi lian, shua ya, chi zao fan. Ba dian wo zou lu qu xue xiao. Wo de xue xiao li jia bu yuan. Zou lu zhi xu yao shi wu fen zhong. Jiu dian wo men kai shi shang ke. Shang wu wo you san jie ke: Zhong wen, shu xue he Ying wen. Zhong wu shi er dian wo zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. Xia wu wo you liang jie ke: li shi he ti yu. San dian ban wo xia ke. Ran hou wo qu tu shu guan du shu. Wu dian wo hui jia. Wan shang wo zuo zuo ye, kan yi hui dian shi. Shi dian wo shui jiao.

Questions:

1. Ta ji dian qi chuang? (What time does he/she get up?) - Ta qi dian qi chuang. (He/she gets up at 7 o'clock.)
2. Xue xiao li jia yuan ma? (Is school far from home?) - Bu yuan. (Not far.)
3. Shang wu you ji jie ke? (How many classes in the morning?) - You san jie ke. (There are three classes.)
4. Ta zai nar chi wu fan? (Where does he/she eat lunch?) - Ta zai xue xiao shi tang chi wu fan. (He/she eats lunch in the school cafeteria.)
5. Ta ji dian shui jiao? (What time does he/she go to bed?) - Ta shi dian shui jiao. (He/she goes to bed at 10 o'clock.)

Part 15: Advanced Topics

15.1 Classical Chinese Influence

Latinxua, while designed as a modern romanization system, still represents the Chinese language which contains many classical elements. Many common expressions have classical origins:

Examples:

1. Jiu nian yi bie (久年一别) - Long time no see (literally: long years, one separation)
2. Ri yue ru suo (日月如梭) - Time flies (literally: sun and moon like shuttles)
3. Xue er shi xi (学而时习) - Learning and practicing regularly
4. You peng zi yuan fang lai (有朋自远方来) - Having friends come from afar

15.2 Regional Variations

While Latinxua was designed for Standard Mandarin, regional variations exist:

Beijing dialect features:

- More use of "r" sound (erhua)
- Example: nar (where) vs. nali

Southern variations:

- Less distinction between zh/ch/sh and z/c/s
- Different vocabulary choices

15.3 Formal vs. Informal Speech

Formal:

- Use of nin (您) instead of ni (你)
- More complete sentence structures
- Polite particles and expressions

Informal:

- Shortened forms
- Colloquial expressions
- Casual particles

Examples: Formal: Qing wen, nin gui xing? (May I ask your honored surname?) Informal: Ni jiao shenme mingzi? (What's your name?)

15.4 Written vs. Spoken Differences

Written Style:

- More formal vocabulary
- Complete grammatical structures
- Classical influences

Spoken Style:

- Colloquialisms
- Shortened forms
- Repetition for emphasis

15.5 Common Mistakes and Corrections

Mistake 1: Using "shi" with adjectives Wrong: Ta shi gao. Correct: Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)

Mistake 2: Forgetting measure words Wrong: Wo you san shu. Correct: Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)

Mistake 3: Wrong word order with time expressions Wrong: Wo qu jintian Beijing. Correct: Wo jintian qu Beijing. (I'm going to Beijing today.)

Mistake 4: Confusing "hen" and "shi" Wrong: Zhe shi hen hao. Correct: Zhe hen hao. OR Zhe shi hao de. (This is good.)

Mistake 5: Using "de" incorrectly Wrong: Wo de shi xuesheng. Correct: Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)

Part 16: Reference Tables

16.1 Measure Word Quick Reference

Measure Word	Used For	Examples
ge	general	yi ge ren (one person)

Measure Word	Used For	Examples
	items, people	
ben	books, magazines	liang ben shu (two books)
zhang	flat objects	san zhang zhi (three sheets of paper)
tiao	long objects	si tiao yu (four fish)
zhi	animals, some objects	wu zhi mao (five cats)
ba	objects with handles	liu ba yizi (six chairs)
jian	clothes, matters	qi jian yifu (seven pieces of clothing)
liang	vehicles	ba liang che (eight cars)
bei	cups, glasses	jiu bei shui (nine glasses of water)
ping	bottles	shi ping pijiu (ten bottles of beer)

Introduction to Latinxua

Latinxua Sin Wenz (拉丁化新文字), also known as Latinxua, was a romanization system for Chinese developed in the 1920s-1930s. It was designed to be a phonetic writing system that could help increase literacy among Chinese speakers. This guide provides an extensive overview of the grammar, vocabulary, and usage of Latinxua.

Historical Background

Latinxua was created in the Soviet Union by Chinese and Soviet linguists as part of literacy campaigns. It was used in parts of China from the 1930s to the 1950s before being

replaced by Pinyin. The system emphasized phonetic representation and eliminated tone marks to simplify learning.

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Latinxua uses 26 Latin letters. Unlike Pinyin, it does not mark tones with diacritics.

Consonants:

- b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, g, k, h, j, q, x, z, c, s, r, zh, ch, sh, w, y

Vowels:

- a, e, i, o, u, ü (written as v in Latinxua)

Part 1: Phonology and Orthography

1.1 Initial Consonants

Stops:

- **b** [p] - similar to 'b' in "bed" but unaspirated
- **p** [pʰ] - aspirated 'p' as in "pet"
- **d** [t] - similar to 'd' in "dog" but unaspirated
- **t** [tʰ] - aspirated 't' as in "top"
- **g** [k] - similar to 'g' in "go" but unaspirated
- **k** [kʰ] - aspirated 'k' as in "kite"

Affricates:

- **z** [ts] - like 'ds' in "ids"
- **c** [tsʰ] - like 'ts' in "cats" with aspiration
- **zh** [tʂ] - like 'j' in "jump" but retroflex
- **ch** [tʂʰ] - like 'ch' in "church" but retroflex
- **j** [tɕ] - like 'j' in "jeep"
- **q** [tɕʰ] - like 'ch' in "cheese"

Fricatives:

- **f** [f] - as in "fun"
- **s** [s] - as in "see"
- **sh** [ʂ] - like 'sh' in "ship" but retroflex
- **x** [ɕ] - between 's' and 'sh', like German 'ich'
- **h** [x] - like Scottish 'loch'
- **r** [ʐ] - like 'r' in "pleasure" but retroflex

Nasals:

- **m** [m] - as in "man"
- **n** [n] - as in "no"

Laterals:

- **l** [l] - as in "let"

Approximants:

- **w** [w] - as in "we"
- **y** [j] - as in "yes"

1.2 Finals (Vowels and Combinations)

Simple Vowels:

- **a** [a] - like 'a' in "father"
- **e** [ɤ] - like 'u' in "but"
- **i** [i] - like 'ee' in "see"
- **o** [o] - like 'o' in "go"
- **u** [u] - like 'oo' in "food"
- **v** [y] - like German 'ü' or French 'u'

Compound Finals:

- **ai** [aɪ] - like 'eye'
- **ei** [eɪ] - like 'ay' in "day"
- **ao** [aʊ] - like 'ow' in "cow"
- **ou** [oʊ] - like 'o' in "go"
- **an** [an] - vowel + n
- **en** [ən] - like 'un' in "fun"
- **ang** [aŋ] - vowel + ng as in "song"

- **eng** [əŋ] - like 'ung' in "sung"
- **ong** [uŋ] - like 'ong' in "tong"

1.3 Syllable Structure

Latinxua syllables follow the pattern: (Initial) + Final + (nasal ending)

Examples:

- ma (mother)
- wo (I/me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he/she/it)
- hao (good)
- ren (person)
- zhongguo (China)

1.4 Tone Representation

Latinxua traditionally does not mark tones, relying on context for disambiguation. This was a deliberate design choice to simplify learning and writing.

Part 2: Basic Grammar

2.1 Word Order

Latinxua follows standard Mandarin Chinese grammar with Subject-Verb-Object (SVO) word order.

Basic Pattern: Subject + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo ai ni. (I love you.)
2. Ta chi fan. (He/she eats rice/food.)
3. Women kan shu. (We read books.)
4. Nimen xue zhongwen. (You [plural] study Chinese.)

5.Tamen zou lu. (They walk.)

2.2 Personal Pronouns

Singular:

- wo (I, me)
- ni (you)
- ta (he, she, it)

Plural:

- women (we, us)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they, them)

Possessive Form: Add "de" after the pronoun:

- wo de (my, mine)
- ni de (your, yours)
- ta de (his, her, hers, its)
- women de (our, ours)
- nimen de (your, yours plural)
- tamen de (their, theirs)

Example Sentences:

1.Wo de shu. (My book.)
2.Ni de jiating. (Your family.)
3.Ta de fangzi. (His/her house.)
4.Women de xuexiao. (Our school.)
5.Nimen de laoshi. (Your [plural] teacher.)
6.Tamen de pengyou. (Their friend.)
7.Zhe shi wo de. (This is mine.)
8.Na shi ta de. (That is his/hers.)
9.Wo de mingzi shi Li Ming. (My name is Li Ming.)
10.Ni de gongzuo shi shenme? (What is your job?)

2.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

- zhe (this)
- na (that)
- zhexie (these)
- naxie (those)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi shu. (This is a book.)
2. Na shi bi. (That is a pen.)
3. Zhexie shi pingguo. (These are apples.)
4. Naxie shi xuesheng. (Those are students.)
5. Zhe ge ren. (This person.)
6. Na ge difang. (That place.)
7. Zhexie dongxi hen hao. (These things are very good.)
8. Naxie haizi hen congming. (Those children are very smart.)
9. Wo xihuan zhe ge. (I like this one.)
10. Ta yao na ge. (He/she wants that one.)

2.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- shei/shui (who)
- shenme (what)
- nali/nar (where)
- zenme (how)
- weishenme (why)
- jige/duoshao (how many/much)
- nage (which)

Examples:

1. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
3. Ni zhu zai nali? (Where do you live?)
4. Ni zenme qu? (How do you go?)
5. Ni weishenme xue zhongwen? (Why do you study

Chinese?)
6. Ni you jige pengyou? (How many friends do you have?)
7. Ni xihuan nage? (Which one do you like?)
8. Shei de shu? (Whose book?)
9. Shenme shihou? (When/What time?)
10. Nage xuexiao? (Which school?)

2.5 The Verb "To Be" (shi)

"Shi" is used to link subjects with nouns or to indicate identity.

Pattern: Subject + shi + Noun/Adjective

Examples:

1. Wo shi xuesheng. (I am a student.)
2. Ta shi laoshi. (He/she is a teacher.)
3. Zhe shi wo de shu. (This is my book.)
4. Women shi pengyou. (We are friends.)
5. Ta shi yisheng. (He/she is a doctor.)
6. Ni shi Meiguoren ma? (Are you American?)
7. Wo bushi Yingguoren. (I am not British.)
8. Tamen shi tongxue. (They are classmates.)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Na shi wo de che. (That is my car.)

Negation: Use "bushi" (not to be)

1. Wo bushi laoshi. (I am not a teacher.)
2. Ta bushi wo de pengyou. (He/she is not my friend.)
3. Zhe bushi wo de. (This is not mine.)

2.6 Adjectives and the Verb "To Be" (Stative Verbs)

In Chinese, many adjectives function as stative verbs and don't require "shi."

Common Adjectives:

- hao (good)

- huai (bad)
- da (big)
- xiao (small)
- gao (tall)
- ai (short)
- pang (fat)
- shou (thin)
- duo (many)
- shao (few)
- gui (expensive)
- pianyi (cheap)
- kuai (fast)
- man (slow)
- re (hot)
- leng (cold)

Pattern: Subject + Adjective

Examples:

1. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is very good.)
2. Zhe ge fangjian hen da. (This room is very big.)
3. Ta hen gao. (He/she is very tall.)
4. Zhe ben shu hen gui. (This book is very expensive.)
5. Wo hen lei. (I am very tired.)
6. Shijian hen kuai. (Time is very fast.)
7. Zhe ge difang hen piaoliang. (This place is very beautiful.)
8. Ta de fangzi hen xiao. (His/her house is very small.)
9. Jintian hen leng. (Today is very cold.)
10. Shui hen re. (The water is very hot.)

2.7 Negation

With "shi": Use "bushi" **With other verbs:** Use "bu" before the verb **With "you" (to have):** Use "mei" or "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Wo bu chi rou. (I don't eat meat.)
2. Ta bu xihuan kafei. (He/she doesn't like coffee.)
3. Women bu qu. (We are not going.)
4. Wo meiyou qian. (I don't have money.)
5. Ta mei lai. (He/she didn't come.)
6. Zhe bu hao. (This is not good.)
7. Wo bu renshi ta. (I don't know him/her.)
8. Ta bu hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can't speak English.)
9. Jintian bu leng. (Today is not cold.)
10. Wo bu yao. (I don't want it.)

2.8 Questions

Yes/No Questions: Add "ma" at the end **Choice Questions:** Use verb-not-verb pattern **Wh-Questions:** Use interrogative pronouns

Examples:

1. Ni hao ma? (Are you well?)
2. Ni chi fan le ma? (Did you eat?)
3. Ta shi xuesheng ma? (Is he/she a student?)
4. Ni qu bu qu? (Are you going or not?)
5. Ta lai bu lai? (Is he/she coming or not?)
6. Ni you meiyou shu? (Do you have books or not?)
7. Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
8. Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
9. Zhe shi shenme? (What is this?)
10. Ni zenme qu? (How are you going?)

Part 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases

3.1 Common Action Verbs

Basic Verbs:

- chi (eat)
- he (drink)
- shuo (speak, say)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- ting (listen)
- zou (walk, go)
- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- zuo (sit, do)
- zhan (stand)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- xie (write)
- du (read)
- xue (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- mai (buy)
- mai (sell - same pronunciation, different character)
- gei (give)
- yao (want)
- xihuan (like)
- ai (love)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo chi zaofan. (I eat breakfast.)
2. Ta he shui. (He/she drinks water.)
3. Women shuo Zhongwen. (We speak Chinese.)
4. Ni kan dianshi. (You watch television.)
5. Ta ting yinyue. (He/she listens to music.)
6. Wo zou lu qu xuexiao. (I walk to school.)
7. Qing jin lai. (Please come in.)
8. Women qu gongyuan. (We go to the park.)
9. Ta zuo zai yizi shang. (He/she sits on the chair.)

10. Haizi zhan zai nar. (The child stands there.)
11. Tamen pao de hen kuai. (They run very fast.)
12. Wo xie xin. (I write a letter.)
13. Ta du bao. (He/she reads the newspaper.)
14. Xuesheng xue Yingwen. (Students study English.)
15. Laoshi jiao shuxue. (The teacher teaches mathematics.)
16. Wo yao mai shu. (I want to buy books.)
17. Ta mai shuiguo. (He/she sells fruit.)
18. Qing gei wo yi bei shui. (Please give me a glass of water.)
19. Wo hen xihuan zhege. (I really like this.)
20. Mama ai haizi. (Mother loves children.)

3.2 Modal Verbs

Common Modals:

- neng (can, be able to - physical ability)
- hui (can, know how to - learned skill)
- keyi (may, can - permission)
- yao (want to, will)
- xiang (would like to, want)
- dei/yinggai (should, ought to)
- bixu (must)

Pattern: Subject + Modal + Verb + Object

Examples:

1. Wo hui shuo Zhongwen. (I can speak Chinese.)
2. Ta neng pao de hen kuai. (He/she can run very fast.)
3. Wo keyi jin qu ma? (May I go in?)
4. Women yao zou le. (We are leaving / We want to leave.)
5. Ni xiang chi shenme? (What would you like to eat?)
6. Ni yinggai shui jiao. (You should sleep.)
7. Women bixu zou le. (We must leave.)

8.Ta hui kai che. (He/she knows how to drive.)
9.Wo bu neng lai. (I cannot come.)
10.Ni keyi bangzhu wo ma? (Can you help me?)
11.Wo xiang he kafei. (I would like to drink coffee.)
12.Ni dei xuexi. (You must study.)
13.Tamen neng youyong. (They can swim.)
14.Wo bu hui tiaowu. (I don't know how to dance.)
15.Women keyi kaishi le ma? (May we start?)

3.3 Aspect Markers

Le (了) - Completed Action:

- Indicates completed action or change of state
- Written as "le" in Latinxua

Guo (过) - Experience:

- Indicates experience or past occurrence
- Written as "guo"

Zhe (着) - Continuous State:

- Indicates ongoing state
- Written as "zhe"

Zai (在) - Progressive:

- Indicates action in progress
- Written as "zai" before verb

Examples with Le:

1.Wo chi fan le. (I ate / I have eaten.)
2.Ta lai le. (He/she came / has come.)
3.Xiawu xia yu le. (It rained in the afternoon.)
4.Women kan dianying le. (We watched a movie.)
5.Ta mai le yi ben shu. (He/she bought a book.)
6.Wo xuehui le. (I learned it / I have learned.)
7.Tianqi bian leng le. (The weather became cold.)
8.Ta kaoshi le. (He/she took the exam.)

9. Wo chi le zaofan. (I ate breakfast.)
10. Tamen zou le. (They left.)

Examples with Guo:

1. Wo qu guo Beijing. (I have been to Beijing.)
2. Ni chi guo Zhongguo cai ma? (Have you eaten Chinese food?)
3. Ta xue guo Fawen. (He/she has studied French.)
4. Women kan guo zhe ge dianying. (We have seen this movie.)
5. Wo mei qu guo. (I have never been there.)
6. Ta zuo guo feiji. (He/she has taken an airplane.)
7. Ni ting guo zhe ge gequ ma? (Have you heard this song?)
8. Wo yong guo zhe ge. (I have used this before.)
9. Tamen zhu guo nar. (They have lived there.)
10. Wo cong lai meiyou jian guo ta. (I have never seen him/her.)

Examples with Zhe:

1. Menshe kai zhe. (The door is open.)
2. Ta chuan zhe hong yifu. (He/she is wearing red clothes.)
3. Qiang shang gua zhe hua. (A painting is hanging on the wall.)
4. Ta na zhe shu. (He/she is holding a book.)
5. Deng liang zhe. (The light is on.)

Examples with Zai:

1. Wo zai kan shu. (I am reading a book.)
2. Ta zai shui jiao. (He/she is sleeping.)
3. Women zai chi fan. (We are eating.)
4. Ni zai zuo shenme? (What are you doing?)
5. Tamen zai wan. (They are playing.)
6. Ta zai xuexiao xuexi. (He/she is studying at school.)
7. Wo zai deng ni. (I am waiting for you.)

8.Mama zai zuo fan. (Mother is cooking.)
9.Haizi zai wan youxi. (The child is playing games.)
10.Ta zai da dianhua. (He/she is making a phone call.)

3.4 Directional Complements

Simple Directional:

- lai (come)
- qu (go)
- shang (up)
- xia (down)
- jin (in, enter)
- chu (out, exit)
- hui (return)
- guo (pass, cross)

Compound Directional: Verb + Direction 1 + Direction 2

Examples:

1.Zou jin lai. (Walk in [toward speaker].)
2.Pao chu qu. (Run out [away from speaker].)
3.Na shang lai. (Bring up [toward speaker].)
4.Song xia qu. (Take down [away from speaker].)
5.Fei hui lai. (Fly back [toward speaker].)
6.Zou guo qu. (Walk over [away from speaker].)
7.Na chu lai. (Take out.)
8.Song jin qu. (Send in.)
9.Pao shang lai. (Run up here.)
10.Tiao xia qu. (Jump down there.)
11.Zou hui jia. (Walk back home.)
12.Dai shang qu. (Take up there.)
13.Ban chu lai. (Move out.)
14.Fang jin qu. (Put in there.)
15.Gun xia lai. (Roll down here.)

3.5 Result Complements

Result complements indicate the result or outcome of an action.

Common Result Complements:

- dao (arrive at, succeed in)
- wan (finish)
- hao (well, properly)
- zhao (successfully find/attain)
- jian (perceive)
- dong (understand)
- hui (know how to, can)
- kai (open)
- shang (up, on)
- gei (to)

Examples:

1. Wo zhao dao le. (I found it.)
2. Ta zuo wan le. (He/she finished doing it.)
3. Ni xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing?)
4. Wo kan jian ta le. (I saw him/her.)
5. Ni ting dong le ma? (Did you understand [by hearing]?)
6. Ta xue hui le. (He/she learned it.)
7. Qing da kai men. (Please open the door.)
8. Wo mai dao le piao. (I succeeded in buying tickets.)
9. Ta na bu dong. (He/she can't lift it.)
10. Wo chi bu wan. (I can't finish eating.)
11. Ni kan de jian ma? (Can you see?)
12. Ta shuo bu qingchu. (He/she can't speak clearly.)
13. Women zou de dao. (We can get there by walking.)
14. Wo ji de zhu. (I can remember.)
15. Ta xiang bu chu lai. (He/she can't think of it.)

3.6 Degree Complements

Degree complements describe the degree or extent of an action using "de."

Pattern: Verb + de + Complement

Examples:

1. Ta pao de kuai. (He/she runs fast.)
2. Ni shuo de hao. (You speak well.)
3. Women zou de man. (We walk slowly.)
4. Ta chang de haoting. (He/she sings nicely.)
5. Wo lei de yao si. (I'm so tired I could die.)
6. Haizi gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (The child jumped up happily.)
7. Ta mang de mei shijian. (He/she is so busy [he/she] has no time.)
8. Wo e de huang. (I'm so hungry I feel dizzy.)
9. Tianqi re de bu de liao. (The weather is unbearably hot.)
10. Ta xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (He/she laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
11. Feng da de chuang hu dou guan bu shang. (The wind is so strong the windows can't be closed.)
12. Wo xue de hen hao. (I study very well.)
13. Zhe ge cai zuo de hen haochi. (This dish is cooked very deliciously.)
14. Ta shuo de hen qingchu. (He/she speaks very clearly.)
15. Women wan de hen gao xing. (We had a great time playing.)

Part 4: Nouns and Measure Words

4.1 Common Nouns

People:

- ren (person)
- pengyou (friend)
- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- jingcha (police officer)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- jingli (manager)
- laobao (boss)
- guwuan (employee)

Family:

- jiating (family)
- baba (father, dad)
- mama (mother, mom)
- erzi (son)
- nüer (daughter)
- gege (older brother)
- didi (younger brother)
- jiejie (older sister)
- meimei (younger sister)
- yeye/zufu (paternal grandfather)
- nainai/zumu (paternal grandmother)
- waigong (maternal grandfather)
- waipo (maternal grandmother)
- shushu (uncle - father's younger brother)
- bobo (uncle - father's older brother)
- ayi (aunt)

- biaoge (cousin - older male)
- biaodi (cousin - younger male)
- biaojie (cousin - older female)
- biaomei (cousin - younger female)

Places:

- difang (place)
- jia (home)
- fangzi (house)
- gongyu (apartment)
- xuexiao (school)
- daxue (university)
- yiyuan (hospital)
- shangdian (shop, store)
- gongsi (company)
- gongyuan (park)
- tushuguan (library)
- fanguan (restaurant)
- fandian (hotel)
- jichang (airport)
- huochezhan (train station)
- yinhang (bank)
- youju (post office)
- dianying yuan (cinema)
- bowuguan (museum)
- chaobahai (supermarket)

Things:

- dongxi (thing)
- shu (book)
- bi (pen)
- qianbi (pencil)
- zhi (paper)

- zhuozi (table)
- yizi (chair)
- chuang (bed)
- men (door)
- chuanghu (window)
- dianhua (telephone)
- shouji (mobile phone)
- diannao (computer)
- dianshi (television)
- che (car)
- zixingche (bicycle)
- yifu (clothes)
- xie (shoes)
- maoyi (sweater)
- kuzi (pants)

Food and Drink:

- fan (rice, food)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- rou (meat)
- niurou (beef)
- zhurou (pork)
- jirou (chicken)
- yu (fish)
- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- juzi (orange)
- shucai (vegetables)
- shui (water)
- cha (tea)

- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu (wine)

Time:

- shijian (time)
- nian (year)
- yue (month)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- tian (day)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- fenzhong (minute)
- miao (second)
- zaoshang (morning)
- shangwu (morning, forenoon)
- zhongwu (noon)
- xiawu (afternoon)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- jintian (today)
- zuotian (yesterday)
- mingtian (tomorrow)
- xianzai (now)
- yiqian (before, previously)
- yihou (after, later)

4.2 Measure Words (Classifiers)

Chinese requires measure words between numbers and nouns.

Common Measure Words:

ge (个) - General classifier:

- yi ge ren (one person)

- liang ge pingguo (two apples)
- san ge wenti (three questions)
- si ge xuesheng (four students)
- wu ge pengyou (five friends)

ben (本) - For books:

- yi ben shu (one book)
- liang ben zazhi (two magazines)
- san ben cidian (three dictionaries)

zhang (张) - For flat objects:

- yi zhang zhi (one sheet of paper)
- liang zhang piao (two tickets)
- san zhang zhuozi (three tables)
- si zhang chuang (four beds)
- wu zhang zhao pian (five photographs)

tiao (条) - For long, narrow objects:

- yi tiao he (one river)
- liang tiao lu (two roads)
- san tiao yu (three fish)
- si tiao ku (four pairs of pants)
- wu tiao gou (five dogs)

zhi (只) - For animals, some objects:

- yi zhi mao (one cat)
- liang zhi niao (two birds)
- san zhi ji (three chickens)
- si zhi bi (four pens)
- wu zhi shou (five hands)

ba (把) - For objects with handles:

- yi ba dao (one knife)
- liang ba yi zi (two chairs)
- san ba san (three umbrellas)

- si ba shao zi (four spoons)

jian (件) - For items of clothing, matters:

- yi jian yifu (one piece of clothing)
- liang jian shi (two matters)
- san jian chenshan (three shirts)

liang (辆) - For vehicles:

- yi liang che (one car)
- liang liang zixingche (two bicycles)
- san liang gong gong qiche (three buses)

wei (位) - For people (polite):

- yi wei laoshi (one teacher)
- liang wei yisheng (two doctors)
- san wei keran (three guests)

sui (岁) - For age:

- wu sui (five years old)
- shi ba sui (eighteen years old)
- san shi sui (thirty years old)

bei (杯) - For cups/glasses:

- yi bei shui (one glass of water)
- liang bei kafei (two cups of coffee)
- san bei cha (three cups of tea)

kuai (块) - For pieces, money:

- yi kuai rou (one piece of meat)
- liang kuai qian (two yuan)
- san kuai dangao (three pieces of cake)

ping (瓶) - For bottles:

- yi ping shui (one bottle of water)
- liang ping pijiu (two bottles of beer)

Example Sentences:

1. Wo you san ben shu. (I have three books.)
2. Ta mai le liang zhang piao. (He/she bought two tickets.)
3. Zheli you wu ge ren. (There are five people here.)
4. Wo yao yi bei kafei. (I want a cup of coffee.)
5. Ta yang le san zhi gou. (He/she raises three dogs.)
6. Women yao liang jian yifu. (We want two pieces of clothing.)
7. Ni you ji liang che? (How many cars do you have?)
8. Haizi wu sui le. (The child is five years old.)
9. Qing gei wo yi ba yizi. (Please give me a chair.)
10. Ta mai le liang ping shui. (He/she bought two bottles of water.)

4.3 Numbers

Cardinal Numbers:

- ling (0)
- yi (1)
- er/liang (2)
- san (3)
- si (4)
- wu (5)
- liu (6)
- qi (7)
- ba (8)
- jiu (9)
- shi (10)
- shi yi (11)
- shi er (12)
- er shi (20)
- san shi (30)
- yi bai (100)

- yi qian (1,000)
- yi wan (10,000)
- shi wan (100,000)
- yi bai wan (1,000,000)

Note: "Er" is used for counting, "liang" is used with measure words.

Examples:

1. yi, er, san, si, wu (one, two, three, four, five)
2. liang ge ren (two people) - NOT "er ge ren"
3. er shi yi (21)
4. san shi wu (35)
5. yi bai er shi san (123)
6. liang qian (2,000)
7. san wan wu qian (35,000)
8. wu bai wan (5,000,000)

Ordinal Numbers: Add "di" before the number:

- di yi (first)
- di er (second)
- di san (third)
- di si (fourth)
- di wu (fifth)
- di liu (sixth)
- di qi (seventh)
- di ba (eighth)
- di jiu (ninth)
- di shi (tenth)

Examples:

1. Zhe shi di yi ci. (This is the first time.)
2. Ta shi di san ge lai de ren. (He/she is the third person to arrive.)
3. Wo zhu zai di wu ceng. (I live on the fifth floor.)

4.Di er ge wenti. (The second question.)
5.Jintian shi di ji tian? (What day is today? / What date?)

4.4 Plurality

Chinese nouns don't change form for plural. Plurality is indicated by context, numbers, or the suffix "men" for pronouns and some people nouns.

With "men" (们):

- women (we)
- nimen (you plural)
- tamen (they)
- haizimen (children)
- laoshimen (teachers)
- pengyoumen (friends)
- tongxuemen (classmates)

Examples:

1.Xuesheng hen duo. (There are many students.)
2.Wo you san ge pengyou. (I have three friends.)
3.Haizimen zai wan. (The children are playing.)
4.Tongxuemen dou lai le. (All the classmates came.)
5.Nimen hao! (Hello, everyone!)

Part 5: Adjectives and Adverbs

5.1 Common Adjectives

Size and Measurement:

- da (big, large)
- xiao (small, little)
- gao (tall, high)
- di (low, short in height)

- ai (short in stature)
- chang (long)
- duan (short in length)
- kuan (wide)
- zhai (narrow)
- hou (thick)
- bao (thin)
- zhong (heavy)
- qing (light in weight)

Quality:

- hao (good)
- huai (bad)
- xin (new)
- jiu (old - for things)
- lao (old - for people)
- nian qing (young)
- gan (dry)
- shi (wet)
- ganjing (clean)
- zang (dirty)
- rong yi (easy)
- kun nan (difficult)
- youyisi (interesting)
- wuliao (boring)
- zhongyao (important)
- anquan (safe)
- weixian (dangerous)

Appearance:

- piaoliang (beautiful)
- meili (beautiful)
- shuai (handsome)

- nankan (ugly)
- ke ai (cute)
- chou (ugly)

Personality:

- congming (smart, clever)
- ben (stupid)
- qinlao (diligent)
- lan (lazy)
- youshan (kind)
- youhao (friendly)
- keqi (polite)
- culu (rude)

Feeling:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuaile (happy, joyful)
- nan guo (sad)
- sheng qi (angry)
- jinzhang (nervous)
- qingsong (relaxed)
- danxin (worried)
- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- lei (tired)
- e (hungry)
- bao (full after eating)
- ke (thirsty)

Color:

- hong (red)
- huang (yellow)
- lan (blue)
- lü (green)

- hei (black)
- bai (white)
- hui (gray)
- fen (pink)
- cheng (orange)
- zi (purple)
- zong (brown)

Temperature:

- re (hot)
- leng (cold)
- wen nuan (warm)
- liang kuai (cool)

Speed:

- kuai (fast, quick)
- man (slow)

Taste:

- haochi (delicious)
- haochi (tasty)
- tian (sweet)
- suan (sour)
- ku (bitter)
- la (spicy)
- xian (salty)
- dan (bland)

Sound:

- da sheng (loud)
- xiao sheng (quiet, soft)
- wen jing (quiet, peaceful)
- chao (noisy)

5.2 Using Adjectives

Basic Pattern: Subject + hen + Adjective

Note: "Hen" (very) is often used even when not emphasizing degree.

Examples:

1. Ta hen gao. (He/she is tall.)
2. Zhe ge fangzi hen da. (This house is big.)
3. Tianqi hen hao. (The weather is good.)
4. Wo hen lei. (I am tired.)
5. Zhe ben shu hen youyisi. (This book is interesting.)
6. Haizi hen ke ai. (The child is cute.)
7. Jintian hen re. (Today is hot.)
8. Zhe ge wenti hen rong yi. (This problem is easy.)
9. Ta de che hen xin. (His/her car is new.)
10. Wo de pengyou hen youshan. (My friend is kind.)

Comparative Pattern: A + bi + B + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta bi wo gao. (He/she is taller than me.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge da. (This one is bigger than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian re. (Today is hotter than yesterday.)
4. Wo de fangzi bi ta de xiao. (My house is smaller than his/hers.)
5. Pingguo bi juzi tian. (Apples are sweeter than oranges.)
6. Ta bi wo da san sui. (He/she is three years older than me.)
7. Zhe ben shu bi na ben youyisi. (This book is more interesting than that one.)
8. Feiji bi huoche kuai. (Airplanes are faster than trains.)
9. Xiawu bi zaoshang mang. (Afternoons are busier than mornings.)
10. Zhe ge difang bi na ge piaoliang. (This place is more beautiful than that one.)

Superlative Pattern: zui + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta shi zui gao de. (He/she is the tallest.)
2. Zhe shi zui hao de. (This is the best.)
3. Beijing shi zui da de chengshi. (Beijing is the biggest city.)
4. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de shu. (This is my favorite book.)
5. Ta shi ban shang zui congming de xuesheng. (He/she is the smartest student in class.)
6. Zhe shi zui gui de. (This is the most expensive.)
7. Xiatian shi zui re de jijie. (Summer is the hottest season.)
8. Zhe shi zui rong yi de fangfa. (This is the easiest method.)
9. Ta shi zui youshan de ren. (He/she is the kindest person.)
10. Zhe shi zui zhongyao de shi. (This is the most important matter.)

5.3 Common Adverbs

Degree Adverbs:

- hen (very)
- tai (too, excessively)
- zhen (really, truly)
- fei chang (extremely)
- te bie (especially)
- bi jiao (relatively, comparatively)
- you dian (a little, somewhat)
- geng (even more)
- zui (most)

Time Adverbs:

- yijing (already)
- hai (still, yet)
- jiu (soon, then)
- cai (only then, not until)
- gang (just now)
- ma shang (immediately)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- congbai (never)
- zong shi (always)

Manner Adverbs:

- manman (slowly)
- kuaikuai (quickly)
- hao hao (well, properly)
- ren zhen (seriously, carefully)
- xiao xin (carefully)
- anquan (safely)

Frequency Adverbs:

- chang (often)
- chang chang (often)
- you shi (sometimes)
- ou er (occasionally)
- mei tian (every day)
- mei ci (every time)
- cong lai (ever - usually with negation)
- ye (also)
- dou (all, both)

Affirmative/Negative:

- dui (correct, right)
- bu dui (incorrect, wrong)

- shi de (yes)
- bu shi (no)
- ye xu (perhaps, maybe)
- ken ding (certainly, definitely)
- dang ran (of course)

5.4 Adverb Placement

Adverbs typically come before verbs or adjectives.

Examples:

1. Wo hen xihuan zhe ge. (I very much like this.)
2. Ta tai pang le. (He/she is too fat.)
3. Zhe ge zhen hao! (This is really good!)
4. Wo yijing chi le. (I already ate.)
5. Ta hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come yet.)
6. Qing man man zou. (Please walk slowly.)
7. Wo chang chang qu nar. (I often go there.)
8. Ta ye hui shuo Yingwen. (He/she can also speak English.)
9. Women dou xihuan yinyue. (We all like music.)
10. Ta gang dao. (He/she just arrived.)
11. Qing xiao xin! (Please be careful!)
12. Wo fei chang gaoxing. (I am extremely happy.)
13. Ta bi jiao gao. (He/she is relatively tall.)
14. Wo you dian lei. (I am a little tired.)
15. Jintian geng re. (Today is even hotter.)

5.5 Reduplication

Adjectives can be reduplicated for emphasis or softening:

Pattern for monosyllabic adjectives: A-A

- hao → haohao (well)
- kuai → kuaikuai (quickly)

- man → manman (slowly)

Pattern for disyllabic adjectives: A-A-B-B or A-A-de

- ganjing → gangangjingjing (very clean)
- gaoxing → gaogaoxingxing (happily)
- piaoliang → piaopiaoliangliang (very beautiful)

Examples:

1. Haohao xuexi! (Study well!)
2. Manman chi. (Eat slowly.)
3. Kuaikuai zou! (Go quickly!)
4. Haizi gaogaoxingxing de zou le. (The child left happily.)
5. Fangjian gangangjingjing de. (The room is very clean.)
6. Ta da da fang fang de. (He/she is very generous.)
7. Qing da da shuo. (Please speak up loudly.)
8. Xiao xiao de haizi. (A small child.)
9. Honghong de lian. (A red face.)
10. Chang chang de toufa. (Long hair.)

Part 6: Prepositions and Location Words

6.1 Common Prepositions

zai (在) - at, in, on: Used to indicate location.

Examples:

1. Wo zai jia. (I am at home.)
2. Ta zai xuexiao. (He/she is at school.)
3. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
4. Women zai Beijing zhu. (We live in Beijing.)
5. Haizi zai gongyuan wan. (The child plays in the park.)

cong (从) - from: Indicates starting point.

Examples:

1. Wo cong jia lai. (I come from home.)

2. Ta cong Beijing lai. (He/she comes from Beijing.)
3. Cong zaoshang dao wanshang. (From morning to evening.)
4. Cong zheli dao nar. (From here to there.)
5. Wo cong yi jiu ba ling nian zhu zai zheli. (I've lived here since 1980.)

dao (到) - to, until: Indicates destination or endpoint.

Examples:

1. Wo dao xuexiao qu. (I go to school.)
2. Ta dao jintian hai mei lai. (He/she hasn't come until today.)
3. Cong jia dao gongsi. (From home to the company.)
4. Wo xue dao wanshang. (I study until evening.)
5. Zou dao nar. (Walk to there.)

gei (给) - to, for: Indicates recipient or beneficiary.

Examples:

1. Wo gei ni yi ben shu. (I give you a book.)
2. Zhe shi gei ta de. (This is for him/her.)
3. Qing gei wo da dianhua. (Please call me.)
4. Ta gei wo xie xin. (He/she writes letters to me.)
5. Wo gei mama zuo fan. (I cook for mother.)

gen (跟) - with: Indicates accompaniment.

Examples:

1. Wo gen ta qu. (I go with him/her.)
2. Ni gen shei shuo hua? (Who are you talking with?)
3. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang. (This one is the same as that one.)
4. Ta gen wo yi qi xue. (He/she studies together with me.)
5. Wo gen pengyou wan. (I play with friends.)

dui (对) - to, toward: Indicates direction or target of action/feeling.

Examples:

1. Ta dui wo hen hao. (He/she is very good to me.)
2. Wo dui zhe ge hen gan xingqu. (I am very interested in this.)
3. Dui bu qi! (Sorry!)
4. Zhe dui ni you yong. (This is useful to you.)
5. Ta dui xuesheng hen yan ge. (He/she is very strict toward students.)

ba (把) - object marker: Moves object before verb for emphasis.

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che mai le. (He/she sold the car.)
4. Qing ba zhe ge gei ta. (Please give this to him/her.)
5. Wo ba zuoye zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)

bei (被) - passive marker: Indicates passive voice.

Examples:

1. Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on / I got caught in the rain.)
2. Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
3. Shu bei wo nong diu le. (The book was lost by me.)
4. Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5. Ta bei jingcha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)

wei/weile (为/为了) - for, for the sake of:

Examples:

1. Weile ni, wo shenme dou yuan yi zuo. (For you, I'm willing to do anything.)
2. Ta weile gongzuo hen mang. (He/she is very busy for work.)

3. Weile jiankang, yao duo yundong. (For health, [you] should exercise more.)
4. Wo wei ta danxin. (I worry for him/her.)
5. Weile mingtian, women yao hao hao zhunbei. (For tomorrow, we should prepare well.)

li (离) - from, away from: Indicates distance.

Examples:

1. Xuexiao li jia hen yuan. (School is far from home.)
2. Wo li ta hen jin. (I am close to him/her.)
3. Li Beijing you duo yuan? (How far is it from Beijing?)
4. Li zheli bu yuan. (Not far from here.)
5. Ta li kai le. (He/she left / departed.)

6.2 Location Words

Basic Location Words:

- shang (上) - on, above, up
- xia (下) - below, down, under
- li (里) - inside
- wai (外) - outside
- qian (前) - front
- hou (后) - back, behind
- zuo (左) - left
- you (右) - right
- pang (旁) - beside
- dui mian (对面) - opposite
- zhongjian (中间) - middle
- fujin (附近) - nearby

With "bian" (边) or "mian" (面):

- shangbian/shangmian (on top, above)
- xiabian/xiamian (below, underneath)
- limian/libain (inside)

- waimian/waibian (outside)
- qianbian/qianmian (in front)
- houbian/houmian (behind)
- zuobian (left side)
- youbian (right side)
- pangbian (beside)
- zhongjian (middle)

Examples:

1. Shu zai zhuozi shang. (The book is on the table.)
2. Mao zai yizi xia. (The cat is under the chair.)
3. Ta zai wuli. (He/she is in the room.)
4. Haizi zai waimian wan. (Children are playing outside.)
5. Wo zhan zai ni qianmian. (I stand in front of you.)
6. Che ting zai fangzi houmian. (The car is parked behind the house.)
7. Yinhang zai zuobian. (The bank is on the left.)
8. Shangdian zai youbian. (The store is on the right.)
9. Ta zuo zai wo pangbian. (He/she sits beside me.)
10. Gongyuan zai duimian. (The park is opposite.)
11. Wo zhu zai chengshi zhongjian. (I live in the middle of the city.)
12. Xuexiao zai fujin. (The school is nearby.)
13. Qian zai koudi li. (The money is in the pocket.)
14. Niao zai shu shang. (The bird is in the tree.)
15. Ta zhan zai wo houmian. (He/she stands behind me.)

6.3 Expressing Existence

Pattern: Place + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li you san ge ren. (There are three people in the room.)
3. Xuexiao li you xuesheng. (There are students at

school.)
4. Jie shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the street.)
5. Gongyuan li you hua. (There are flowers in the park.)
6. Tian shang you yun. (There are clouds in the sky.)
7. Bingxiang li you shiwu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
10. Beijing you hen duo bowuguan. (Beijing has many museums.)

Negative: Use "meiyou"

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang meiyou shu. (There is no book on the table.)
2. Fangjian li meiyou ren. (There is nobody in the room.)
3. Bingxiang li meiyou chi de. (There is no food in the refrigerator.)
4. Jintian meiyou ke. (There is no class today.)
5. Wo meiyou qian. (I have no money.)

Part 7: Time Expressions

7.1 Days of the Week

- xingqi yi / zhou yi (Monday)
- xingqi er / zhou er (Tuesday)
- xingqi san / zhou san (Wednesday)
- xingqi si / zhou si (Thursday)
- xingqi wu / zhou wu (Friday)
- xingqi liu / zhou liu (Saturday)
- xingqi tian / xingqi ri / zhou tian / zhou ri (Sunday)

Examples:

1. Jintian xingqi ji? (What day is today?)
2. Jintian xingqi san. (Today is Wednesday.)
3. Xingqi yi wo you ke. (I have class on Monday.)
4. Zhou mo wo xiu xi. (I rest on the weekend.)
5. Xingqi liu wo qu gongyuan. (On Saturday I go to the park.)

7.2 Months

- yi yue (January)
- er yue (February)
- san yue (March)
- si yue (April)
- wu yue (May)
- liu yue (June)
- qi yue (July)
- ba yue (August)
- jiu yue (September)
- shi yue (October)
- shi yi yue (November)
- shi er yue (December)

Examples:

1. Jintian ji yue? (What month is it?)
2. Xianzai shi san yue. (Now it is March.)
3. Wo liu yue sheng ri. (My birthday is in June.)
4. Yi yue hen leng. (January is very cold.)
5. Qi yue he ba yue hen re. (July and August are very hot.)

7.3 Dates

Pattern: Year + Month + Day

Examples:

1. er ling er wu nian shi yue jiu ri (October 9, 2025)
2. Jintian ji hao? (What date is today?)
3. Jintian shi hao. (Today is the 10th.)
4. Wo san yue wu hao lai. (I come on March 5th.)
5. Ta er yue shi wu ri zou. (He/she leaves on February 15th.)
6. yi jiu jiu wu nian (1995)
7. liang qian ling yi nian (2001)
8. Wo yi jiu ba wu nian chu sheng. (I was born in 1985.)

7.4 Time of Day

Hours:

- yi dian (1 o'clock)
- liang dian (2 o'clock)
- san dian (3 o'clock)
- etc.

Minutes:

- san dian shi fen (3:10)
- si dian er shi fen (4:20)
- wu dian san shi fen / wu dian ban (5:30)
- liu dian si shi wu fen / liu dian san ke (6:45)
- qi dian cha wu fen (5 minutes to 7 / 6:55)

Examples:

1. Xianzai ji dian? (What time is it now?)
2. Xianzai ba dian. (It's 8 o'clock now.)
3. Wo liu dian qi chuang. (I get up at 6 o'clock.)
4. Women ba dian ban shang ke. (We have class at 8:30.)
5. Ta shi yi dian chi wufan. (He/she eats lunch at 11 o'clock.)
6. Wo wan shang jiu dian shui jiao. (I sleep at 9 PM.)
7. Huoche shi er dian kai. (The train departs at 12 o'clock.)
8. Xianzai liang dian er shi fen. (It's 2:20 now.)

9. Wo si dian ban xia ke. (I finish class at 4:30.)
10. Dianying qi dian kai shi. (The movie starts at 7 o'clock.)

AM/PM:

- shangwu (morning, AM before noon)
- xiawu (afternoon, PM)
- wanshang (evening, night)
- ling chen (very early morning, after midnight)

Examples:

1. Shangwu jiu dian. (9 AM)
2. Xiawu san dian. (3 PM)
3. Wanshang ba dian. (8 PM)
4. Ling chen liang dian. (2 AM)

7.5 Time Duration

Pattern: Number + Time Unit

Time Units:

- miao (second)
- fenzhong (minute)
- xiaoshi (hour)
- tian (day)
- xingqi/zhou (week)
- yue (month)
- nian (year)

Examples:

1. Wo xue le san nian Zhongwen. (I studied Chinese for three years.)
2. Ta deng le yi ge xiaoshi. (He/she waited for one hour.)
3. Women zai nar zhu le wu tian. (We stayed there for five days.)
4. Zhe ge dianying liang ge xiaoshi. (This movie is two

hours.)
5. Wo mei tian xue yi ge xiaoshi. (I study one hour every day.)
6. Ta lai le san ge yue le. (He/she has been here for three months.)
7. Wo zuo le shi fenzhong. (I sat for ten minutes.)
8. Tamen zuo le liang ge xingqi de gongzuo. (They did two weeks of work.)
9. Wo ren shi ta wu nian le. (I've known him/her for five years.)
10. Zhe jie ke si shi wu fenzhong. (This class is 45 minutes.)

7.6 Time Sequence

Before/After:

- yiqian (before, ago)
- yihou (after, later)
- zhiqian (before)
- zhihou (after)

Examples:

1. San tian yiqian. (Three days ago.)
2. Liang nian yihou. (Two years later / After two years.)
3. Chi fan yiqian. (Before eating.)
4. shang ke yihou. (After class.)
5. Wo lai yiqian, ta zou le. (Before I came, he/she left.)
6. Ta zou le yihou, wo lai le. (After he/she left, I came.)
7. San ge yue zhiqian. (Three months ago.)
8. Yi ge xingqi zhihou. (After one week.)
9. Hen jiu yiqian. (A long time ago.)
10. Bu jiu yihou. (Not long after / Soon after.)

Recently/Future:

- zuijin (recently)
- gangcai (just now)

- gang (just)
- mashang (immediately, right away)
- yihui (in a moment)
- jianglai (in the future)

Examples:

1. Wo zuijin hen mang. (I've been very busy recently.)
2. Ta gangcai lai le. (He/she just came.)
3. Wo gang chi le fan. (I just ate.)
4. Wo mashang zou. (I'm leaving right away.)
5. Yihui jian. (See you in a bit.)
6. Jianglai wo xiang dang laoshi. (In the future I want to be a teacher.)
7. Gang gang xia yu le. (It just rained.)
8. Wo mashang jiu dao. (I'll arrive right away.)
9. Zuijin tianqi hen hao. (The weather has been very good recently.)
10. Ta yihui jiu hui lai. (He/she will be back in a moment.)

Part 8: Complex Sentences

8.1 Conjunctions

And:

- he (and - connects nouns)
- gen (and, with)
- hai (also, in addition)
- ye (also, too)
- you (both...and, again)

Examples:

1. Wo he ta shi pengyou. (He/she and I are friends.)
2. Pinggu he juzi. (Apples and oranges.)
3. Wo xihuan cha, ye xihuan kafei. (I like tea and also like

coffee.)
4. Ta shi laoshi, hai shi yisheng. (He/she is a teacher and also a doctor.)
5. Wo gen ta yi qi qu. (I go together with him/her.)
6. Ta you congming you yonggong. (He/she is both smart and hardworking.)
7. Jintian hai xia yu. (It's raining again today.)
8. Ta ye lai le. (He/she also came.)

But:

- danshi (but)
- keshi (but)
- buguo (however)
- ran er (however, nevertheless)

Examples:

1. Wo hen lei, danshi hai yao gongzuo. (I'm very tired, but still have to work.)
2. Ta hen congming, keshi hen lan. (He/she is very smart, but very lazy.)
3. Zhe ge hen gui, buguo hen hao. (This is expensive, but very good.)
4. Wo xiang qu, keshi meiyou shijian. (I want to go, but don't have time.)
5. Tianqi bu hao, ranér women hai shi qu le. (The weather wasn't good, but we still went.)

Or:

- huozhe (or)
- haishi (or - in questions)

Examples:

1. Ni yao cha huozhe kafei? (Do you want tea or coffee?)
2. Jintian huozhe mingtian. (Today or tomorrow.)
3. Ni xihuan hong de haishi lan de? (Do you like the red one or the blue one?)

4. Women zou huozhe zuo che? (Should we walk or take a vehicle?)
5. Ni qu haishi bu qu? (Are you going or not?)

Because/So:

- yinwei...suoyi (because...therefore)
- yinwei (because)
- suoyi (so, therefore)

Examples:

1. Yinwei xia yu, suoyi wo bu qu. (Because it's raining, so I'm not going.)
2. Wo bu qu, yinwei wo hen mang. (I'm not going because I'm very busy.)
3. Ta hen lei, suoyi yao xiu xi. (He/she is tired, so wants to rest.)
4. Yinwei ta sheng bing le, suoyi mei lai. (Because he/she is sick, so didn't come.)
5. Wo bu hui, suoyi bu neng jiao ni. (I don't know how, so can't teach you.)

If:

- ruguo...jiu (if...then)
- yao shi (if)
- jia ru (if, suppose)

Examples:

1. Ruguo ni you shijian, jiu lai zhao wo. (If you have time, come find me.)
2. Yao shi xia yu, women jiu bu qu le. (If it rains, we won't go.)
3. Ruguo ta lai, qing gaosu wo. (If he/she comes, please tell me.)
4. Jia ru wo you qian, wo jiu mai. (If I had money, I would buy it.)
5. Ni yao shi bu xiang qu, jiu bie qu. (If you don't want to

go, then don't go.)

Although:

- suiran...danshi (although...but)
- jinguan (although, despite)

Examples:

1. Suiran hen lei, danshi wo hai yao xue. (Although very tired, I still have to study.)
2. Jinguan hen nan, ta hai shi zuo dao le. (Although very difficult, he/she still did it.)
3. Suiran ta hen qiong, danshi hen kuaile. (Although he/she is poor, but very happy.)
4. Jinguan xia yu, women hai shi qu le. (Despite the rain, we still went.)
5. Suiran wo bu hui, danshi wo xiang xue. (Although I don't know how, I want to learn.)

8.2 Conditional Sentences

Pattern: Ruguo/Yaoshi + Condition + Jiu + Result

Examples:

1. Ruguo mingtian bu xia yu, women jiu qu pa shan. (If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.)
2. Yaoshi ni bu lai, wo jiu bu qu. (If you don't come, I won't go.)
3. Ruguo ni xiang xue, wo jiu jiao ni. (If you want to learn, I'll teach you.)
4. Yaoshi tai gui, wo jiu bu mai. (If it's too expensive, I won't buy it.)
5. Ruguo ni e le, jiu chi dian dongxi. (If you're hungry, eat something.)
6. Yaoshi ta tongy, women jiu kai shi. (If he/she agrees, we'll start.)
7. Ruguo wo you konr, jiu qu kan ni. (If I have free time, I'll go see you.)

8. Yaoshi ni bu shufu, jiu qu kan yisheng. (If you don't feel well, go see a doctor.)
9. Ruguo tianqi hao, jiu chu qu san bu. (If the weather is good, go out for a walk.)
10. Yaoshi ni bu dong, jiu wen wo. (If you don't understand, ask me.)

8.3 Purpose Clauses

Pattern: Weile + Purpose

Examples:

1. Weile tonguo kaoshi, wo mei tian xue xi. (In order to pass the exam, I study every day.)
2. Ta weile jian fei, bu chi wan fan. (In order to lose weight, he/she doesn't eat dinner.)
3. Weile xue hao Zhongwen, wo qu le Beijing. (To learn Chinese well, I went to Beijing.)
4. Tamen weile zheng qian, hen nu li gong zuo. (To make money, they work very hard.)
5. Weile jian kang, wo mei tian duan lian. (For health, I exercise every day.)
6. Ta weile mai fang, cun le hen duo qian. (To buy a house, he/she saved a lot of money.)
7. Weile kan ri chu, women hen zao qi chuang. (To see the sunrise, we got up very early.)
8. Wo weile bang ni, lai le. (To help you, I came.)
9. Ta weile zhao gong zuo, xue le Ying wen. (To find a job, he/she studied English.)
10. Weile sheng shi jian, women zuo chu zu che. (To save time, we took a taxi.)

8.4 Result Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Result

Examples:

1. Ta mang de mei shi jian chi fan. (He/she is so busy that [he/she] has no time to eat.)
2. Wo lei de zou bu dong le. (I'm so tired that I can't walk.)
3. Tianqi re de wo shui bu zhao. (The weather is so hot that I can't sleep.)
4. Ta pang de men dou jin bu qu. (He/she is so fat that [he/she] can't even enter the door.)
5. Feng da de shu dou dao le. (The wind is so strong that trees fell.)
6. Haizi xiao de zhan bu qi lai. (The child laughed so hard [he/she] couldn't stand up.)
7. Zhe ben shu you yi si de wo yi tian jiu kan wan le. (This book is so interesting that I finished it in one day.)
8. Ta sheng qi de lian dou hong le. (He/she is so angry that [his/her] face turned red.)
9. Wo hai pa de bu gan dong. (I'm so scared that I don't dare move.)
10. Ta gao xing de tiao qi lai le. (He/she was so happy that [he/she] jumped up.)

8.5 Comparison Sentences

Pattern 1: A + bi + B + Adjective **Pattern 2:** A + meiyou + B + (name) + Adjective **Pattern 3:** A + gen/he + B + yiyang + Adjective

Examples - Comparative (bi):

1. Wo bi ta da liang sui. (I am two years older than him/her.)
2. Zhe ge bi na ge pian yi wu kuai qian. (This one is 5 yuan cheaper than that one.)
3. Jintian bi zuotian leng duo le. (Today is much colder than yesterday.)
4. Ta bi wo gao de duo. (He/she is much taller than me.)
5. Zhe tiao lu bi na tiao lu yuan yi dian. (This road is a bit farther than that road.)

Examples - Not as...as (meiyou):

1. Wo meiyou ta name gao. (I am not as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge meiyou na ge hao. (This one is not as good as that one.)
3. Jintian meiyou zuotian re. (Today is not as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta meiyou wo pao de kuai. (He/she doesn't run as fast as me.)
5. Zhe ben shu meiyou na ben you yi si. (This book is not as interesting as that one.)

Examples - As...as (yiyang):

1. Wo gen ta yiyang gao. (I am as tall as him/her.)
2. Zhe ge gen na ge yiyang gui. (This one is as expensive as that one.)
3. Jintian he zuotian yiyang re. (Today is as hot as yesterday.)
4. Ta shuo de gen wo yiyang hao. (He/she speaks as well as me.)
5. Ni he ta yiyang congming. (You are as smart as him/her.)

8.6 Relative Clauses

Pattern: ...de + Noun

Examples:

1. Zuo zai nar de ren shi wo pengyou. (The person sitting there is my friend.)
2. Wo zuotian mai de shu hen hao. (The book I bought yesterday is very good.)
3. Ta xie de zi hen piaoliang. (The characters he/she writes are very beautiful.)
4. Wo xihuan chi de cai. (The dishes I like to eat.)
5. Zhe shi wo zhu de difang. (This is the place where I live.)

6. Gei wo da dianhua de ren shi shei? (Who is the person who called me?)
7. Ni zai kan de shu shi shenme? (What is the book you are reading?)
8. Ta shuo de hua hen dui. (What he/she said is very correct.)
9. Women qu de na ge difang hen piaoliang. (The place we went to is very beautiful.)
10. Jiao wo Zhongwen de laoshi hen hao. (The teacher who teaches me Chinese is very good.)
11. Wo mei tian he de cha shi lü cha. (The tea I drink every day is green tea.)
12. Zhe shi wo zui xihuan de ge qu. (This is my favorite song.)
13. Ta kai de che hen gui. (The car he/she drives is very expensive.)
14. Ni jian guo de na ge ren shi shei? (Who is that person you've met?)
15. Wo xiang chi ma ma zuo de fan. (I want to eat the food mother makes.)

Part 9: Special Sentence Patterns

9.1 The "Ba" Construction

The "ba" construction emphasizes the disposal or handling of an object.

Pattern: Subject + ba + Object + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1. Qing ba men guan shang. (Please close the door.)
2. Wo ba shu fang zai zhuozi shang le. (I put the book on the table.)
3. Ta ba che xi gan jing le. (He/she washed the car clean.)

4.Wo ba zhe ge gei ni. (I give this to you.)
5.Qing ba zhe ge na zou. (Please take this away.)
6.Ta ba fan chi wan le. (He/she finished eating the food.)
7.Ni ba zi xie hao le ma? (Did you finish writing the characters?)
8.Wo ba yi fu xi le. (I washed the clothes.)
9.Qing ba deng guan le. (Please turn off the light.)
10.Ta ba qian dou hua wan le. (He/she spent all the money.)
11.Wo ba gong ke zuo wan le. (I finished the homework.)
12.Ta ba wo de bi na zou le. (He/she took my pen.)
13.Ni yao ba zhe ge gao su ta. (You need to tell him/her this.)
14.Wo ba ta wang le. (I forgot about him/her.)
15.Qing ba chuang hu da kai. (Please open the window.)

9.2 The "Bei" Construction (Passive Voice)

The "bei" construction indicates passive voice.

Pattern: Subject + bei + (Agent) + Verb + Other Elements

Examples:

1.Wo bei yu lin le. (I was rained on.)
2.Shu bei ta na zou le. (The book was taken away by him/her.)
3.Ta bei jing cha zhua le. (He/she was caught by the police.)
4.Che bei tou le. (The car was stolen.)
5.Wo de shouji bei tou le. (My phone was stolen.)
6.Ta bei laoshi piping le. (He/she was criticized by the teacher.)
7.Zhe ge wen ti bei jie jue le. (This problem was solved.)
8.Wo bei gou yao le. (I was bitten by a dog.)
9.Ta bei da le. (He/she was hit.)
10.Fangzi bei shao le. (The house was burned.)
11.Wo de mingzi bei xie cuo le. (My name was written

wrong.)
12. Zhe ben shu bei fan yi cheng Yingwen le. (This book was translated into English.)
13. Haizi bei ma ma jiao xing le. (The child was woken up by mother.)
14. Ta bei pian le. (He/she was deceived.)
15. Zhe jian shi bei wang ji le. (This matter was forgotten.)

9.3 Existential Sentences with "You"

Pattern: Location + you + Object

Examples:

1. Zhuozi shang you yi ben shu. (There is a book on the table.)
2. Jiao shi li you hen duo xuesheng. (There are many students in the classroom.)
3. Gongyuan li you hen duo shu. (There are many trees in the park.)
4. Tian shang you xing xing. (There are stars in the sky.)
5. Bing xiang li you shi wu. (There is food in the refrigerator.)
6. Lu shang you hen duo che. (There are many cars on the road.)
7. Shu shang you niao. (There are birds in the tree.)
8. Qiang shang you hua. (There is a painting on the wall.)
9. Wo de baoli you yi ben shu he liang zhi bi. (In my bag there is a book and two pens.)
10. Beijing you hen duo ming sheng gu ji. (Beijing has many historical sites.)
11. Zhongguo you shi si yi ren. (China has 1.4 billion people.)
12. Na li you yi ge wen ti. (There is a problem there.)
13. Zhe ge chengshi you hen duo gongyuan. (This city has many parks.)
14. Wo jia you si ge ren. (My family has four people.)

15. Zhe ge fangzi you san ge wo shi. (This house has three bedrooms.)

9.4 The "Shi...de" Construction

Used to emphasize time, place, manner, or agent of a past action.

Pattern: shi + (emphasized element) + Verb + de

Examples:

1. Wo shi zuotian lai de. (I came yesterday. [emphasis on when])
2. Ta shi zai Beijing chu sheng de. (He/she was born in Beijing. [emphasis on where])
3. Women shi zuo feiji lai de. (We came by plane. [emphasis on how])
4. Zhe ben shu shi wo mai de. (This book was bought by me. [emphasis on who])
5. Wo shi shang ge yue kai shi xue de. (I started learning last month.)
6. Ta shi gen mama yi qi lai de. (He/she came together with mother.)
7. Zhe shi wo zuo de. (This was made by me.)
8. Women shi zai xuexiao ren shi de. (We met at school.)
9. Ta shi qi nian qian jie hun de. (He/she got married seven years ago.)
10. Zhe ge zi shi laoshi jiao de. (This character was taught by the teacher.)
11. Wo shi cong Meiguo lai de. (I came from America.)
12. Ta shi zuo gong gong qi che lai de. (He/she came by bus.)
13. Ni shi ji dian dao de? (What time did you arrive?)
14. Ta shi zai nar mai de? (Where did he/she buy it?)
15. Women shi zenme zhi dao de? (How did we know?)

9.5 The "Lian...dou/ye" Construction

Used for emphasis, meaning "even."

Pattern: lian + Object + dou/ye + Verb

Examples:

1. Ta lian Zhongwen dou bu hui shuo. (He/she can't even speak Chinese.)
2. Wo lian yi ge pengyou ye meiyou. (I don't even have one friend.)
3. Ta mang de lian fan dou mei chi. (He/she was so busy [he/she] didn't even eat.)
4. Wo lian ta de mingzi dou bu zhi dao. (I don't even know his/her name.)
5. Haizi lian shui dou bu xiang he. (The child doesn't even want to drink water.)
6. Ta lian yi ju hua ye mei shuo. (He/she didn't even say one word.)
7. Wo lian yi kuai qian dou meiyou. (I don't even have one yuan.)
8. Lian wo dou bu xin. (Even I don't believe it.)
9. Ta lian xiao haizi dou da. (He/she even hits small children.)
10. Lian zhe me jian dan de shi ta dou bu hui. (He/she can't even do such a simple thing.)

9.6 The "Yue lai yue" Construction

Used to express "more and more."

Pattern: yue lai yue + Adjective/Verb

Examples:

1. Tianqi yue lai yue leng. (The weather is getting colder and colder.)
2. Ta yue lai yue gao. (He/she is getting taller and taller.)
3. Wo yue lai yue xihuan zhe ge chengshi. (I like this city more and more.)

4. Zhe ge wenti yue lai yue fu za. (This problem is getting more and more complex.)
5. Shenghuo yue lai yue hao. (Life is getting better and better.)
6. Ta yue lai yue pang. (He/she is getting fatter and fatter.)
7. Wo yue lai yue lei. (I'm getting more and more tired.)
8. Shi qing yue lai yue nan. (Things are getting more and more difficult.)
9. Ta Zhongwen shuo de yue lai yue hao. (His/her Chinese speaking is getting better and better.)
10. Wo men yue lai yue mang. (We are getting busier and busier.)

9.7 The "You...you..." Construction

Used to express "both...and..."

Pattern: you + Adjective + you + Adjective

Examples:

1. Ta you gao you shuai. (He is both tall and handsome.)
2. Zhe ge cai you hao chi you pianyi. (This dish is both delicious and cheap.)
3. Ta you congming you qin fen. (He/she is both smart and diligent.)
4. Zhe jian yifu you hao kan you shufu. (This clothing is both good-looking and comfortable.)
5. Jintian you re you chao. (Today is both hot and noisy.)
6. Ta you hui chang you hui tiao. (He/she can both sing and dance.)
7. Zhe ge ren you li mao you youshan. (This person is both polite and kind.)
8. Haizi you huo po you ke ai. (The child is both lively and cute.)
9. Zhe ge fangfa you jian dan you you xiao. (This method is both simple and effective.)
10. Ta you neng gan you nu li. (He/she is both capable

and hardworking.)

Part 10: Extended Vocabulary Lists

10.1 Occupations and Professions

- laoshi (teacher)
- xuesheng (student)
- yisheng (doctor)
- hushi (nurse)
- jingcha (police officer)
- xiaofang yuan (firefighter)
- junren (soldier)
- lüshi (lawyer)
- faguai (judge)
- gongchengshi (engineer)
- jianzhu shi (architect)
- chengxu yuan (programmer)
- shejishi (designer)
- yi shu jia (artist)
- zuojia (writer)
- jizhe (journalist/reporter)
- biaji (editor)
- she yingshi (photographer)
- yangyuan (actor/actress)
- geshou (singer)
- yinyuejia (musician)
- wu dao jia (dancer)
- chu shi (chef, cook)
- fuwuyuan (waiter/waitress)
- shouhuoyuan (salesperson)
- jingli (manager)

- mishu (secretary)
- kuaijishi (accountant)
- yinhang jia (banker)
- shangren (businessman)
- qiyejia (entrepreneur)
- nongmin (farmer)
- gongren (worker)
- siji (driver)
- feiyingyuan (pilot)
- kong zhong xiaojie (flight attendant)
- daoyou (tour guide)
- fanyi (translator/interpreter)
- tushuguan yuan (librarian)
- keue jia (scientist)
- yanjiu yuan (researcher)
- jiaoshou (professor)
- zhuren (director)
- zongjingli (general manager/CEO)
- dongshizhang (chairman)
- yuangong (employee)
- tuixiu ren yuan (retiree)

10.2 Animals

Domestic Animals:

- gou (dog)
- mao (cat)
- ma (horse)
- niu (cow, ox)
- zhu (pig)
- yang (sheep, goat)
- ji (chicken)
- ya (duck)

- e (goose)
- tu (rabbit)
- lü (donkey)
- luotuo (camel)

Wild Animals:

- laohu (tiger)
- shizi (lion)
- xiong (bear)
- xiong mao (panda)
- lang (wolf)
- hu li (fox)
- hou (monkey)
- da xingxing (gorilla)
- xiang (elephant)
- changlu (giraffe)
- banma (zebra)
- lü (deer)
- kangshu (kangaroo)
- shenshu (squirrel)
- ci wei (hedgehog)
- bao (leopard)

Aquatic Animals:

- yu (fish)
- jingyu (whale)
- haitun (dolphin)
- shayu (shark)
- wugui (turtle)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- zhangyu (octopus)
- youyu (squid)

- haibao (seal)
- haixing (starfish)

Birds:

- niao (bird)
- laoying (eagle)
- maque (sparrow)
- gezi (pigeon)
- yanzi (swallow)
- wuya (crow)
- tige (owl)
- huangying (oriole)
- e (goose)
- tiane (swan)
- kongque (peacock)
- yingwu (parrot)
- qie (magpie)

Insects:

- kunchong (insect)
- mifeng (bee)
- hudie (butterfly)
- wangzi (mosquito)
- cangying (fly)
- zhizhu (spider)
- mayi (ant)
- mangchong (grasshopper)
- yinghuochong (firefly)
- piao chong (ladybug)

10.3 Plants and Nature

Trees:

- shu (tree)

- songshu (pine tree)
- yeshu (palm tree)
- liu shu (willow tree)
- fengshu (maple tree)
- yingshu (cherry tree)
- pingguo shu (apple tree)

Flowers:

- hua (flower)
- meigui (rose)
- baihe (lily)
- juhua (chrysanthemum)
- yinghua (cherry blossom)
- xiangri kui (sunflower)
- lianhua (lotus)
- lanhua (orchid)
- mudan (peony)
- qiangwei (rose - wild rose)
- yujinxiang (tulip)
- shui xian (daffodil)

Other Plants:

- cao (grass)
- zhucao (bamboo)
- xianren zhang (cactus)
- putao teng (grapevine)

Natural Features:

- shan (mountain)
- he (river)
- hu (lake)
- hai (sea, ocean)
- lin (forest)

- shamo (desert)
- cao yuan (grassland, prairie)
- dao (island)
- bandao (peninsula)
- hai wan (bay)
- hai xia (strait)
- shangu (valley)
- dongxue (cave)
- pubr (waterfall)
- wenquan (hot spring)
- huoshan (volcano)

Weather and Climate:

- tianqi (weather)
- qihou (climate)
- qing tian (sunny day)
- yin tian (cloudy day)
- yu (rain)
- xue (snow)
- feng (wind)
- wu (fog)
- bing bao (hail)
- lei (thunder)
- shandian (lightning)
- baofeng yu (storm)
- taifeng (typhoon)
- longjiuan feng (tornado)
- hongshui (flood)
- gan han (drought)

10.4 Body Parts

- shenti (body)

- tou (head)
- tou fa (hair)
- lian (face)
- yan jing (eye)
- er duo (ear)
- bi zi (nose)
- zui (mouth)
- yachi (tooth)
- shetou/she (tongue)
- xiaba (chin)
- jing zi (neck)
- jian bang (shoulder)
- ge bo (arm)
- zhou (elbow)
- shou (hand)
- shou zhi (finger)
- da mu zhi (thumb)
- shi zhi (index finger)
- zhong zhi (middle finger)
- wu ming zhi (ring finger)
- xiao zhi (pinky finger)
- zhi jia (fingernail)
- xiong (chest)
- du zi (belly, abdomen)
- bei (back)
- yao (waist)
- tun bu (buttocks, hip)
- tui (leg)
- xi (knee)
- jiao (foot)
- jiao zhi (toe)
- pi fu (skin)

- gu tou (bone)
- ji rou (muscle)
- xin zang (heart)
- fei (lung)
- wei (stomach)
- gan (liver)
- shen (kidney)
- da nao (brain)
- xue (blood)

10.5 Clothing and Accessories

Clothes:

- yifu (clothes, clothing)
- chenshan (shirt)
- T xu shan (T-shirt)
- changxiushan (long-sleeve shirt)
- duanxiushan (short-sleeve shirt)
- waiyi/waitao (coat, jacket)
- dayi (overcoat)
- yuyi (raincoat)
- kuzi (pants, trousers)
- duanku (shorts)
- niuziku (jeans)
- qunzi (skirt)
- lianyiqun (dress)
- xizhuang (suit)
- maoyi (sweater)
- weiyi (vest)
- neiku (underwear)
- neiyi (bra, undershirt)
- wa zi (socks)
- changwa (stockings)

- shui yi (pajamas)
- yongzhuang (swimsuit)
- yuendongyfu (sportswear)

Footwear:

- xie (shoes)
- yundongxie (sneakers, athletic shoes)
- pixie (leather shoes)
- liangxie (sandals)
- tuoxie (slippers)
- xuezi (boots)
- gaogenxie (high heels)

Accessories:

- maozi (hat, cap)
- shoushao (glove)
- lingdai (necktie)
- waitao (scarf)
- pi dai (belt)
- yan jing (eyeglasses)
- taiyang jing (sunglasses)
- shouiiao (watch, wristwatch)
- shoubao (handbag, purse)
- beibao (backpack)
- qianbao (wallet)
- weijin (scarf, muffler)
- xiong zhen (brooch)
- erhuang (earring)
- xianglian (necklace)
- jiezhi (ring)
- shouzhuao (bracelet)

10.6 Food and Beverages

Grains and Staples:

- fan (rice, cooked rice)
- dami (rice, uncooked)
- mian (noodles)
- mianbao (bread)
- mantou (steamed bun)
- baozi (steamed stuffed bun)
- jiaozi (dumpling)
- huntun (wonton)
- zongzi (rice dumpling)
- zhou (congee, porridge)

Meat:

- rou (meat)
- zhurou (pork)
- niurou (beef)
- yangrou (lamb, mutton)
- jirou (chicken)
- yarou (duck)
- yucai (fish meat)

Seafood:

- haixian (seafood)
- yu (fish)
- xia (shrimp)
- pangxie (crab)
- youyu (squid)
- mu li (oyster)
- shan bei (scallop)

Vegetables:

- shucai (vegetables)

- bai cai (cabbage, bok choy)
- bocar (spinach)
- huluobu (carrot)
- tudou (potato)
- fan qie (tomato)
- huanggua (cucumber)
- qiezi (eggplant)
- qing jiao (green pepper)
- cong (green onion, scallion)
- suan (garlic)
- jiang (ginger)
- dou fu (tofu)
- dou ya (bean sprouts)
- mo gu (mushroom)
- yumi (corn)
- wan dou (pea)

Fruits:

- shuiguo (fruit)
- pingguo (apple)
- xiangjiao (banana)
- chengzi/juzi (orange)
- xigua (watermelon)
- putao (grape)
- caomei (strawberry)
- li (pear)
- taozi (peach)
- li zhi (lychee)
- mangzao (mango)
- boluo (pineapple)
- mi (kiwi)
- mulberry (mulberry)

- yingzao (cherry)
- ningmeng (lemon)
- ye zi (coconut)
- shiliu (pomegranate)

Drinks:

- shui (water)
- cha (tea)
- lu cha (green tea)
- hong cha (black tea)
- wu long cha (oolong tea)
- kafei (coffee)
- niunai (milk)
- dou jiang (soy milk)
- guozhi (fruit juice)
- chengzhi (orange juice)
- qi shui (soda, soft drink)
- ke le (cola)
- pijiu (beer)
- putao jiu/hong jiu (wine)
- baijiu (Chinese liquor)
- jiu (alcohol, liquor)
- kuangquan shui (mineral water)

Snacks and Desserts:

- lingshi (snack)
- bingan (cookie, biscuit)
- dangao (cake)
- qiaokeli (chocolate)
- tang (candy, sugar)
- bing qilin (ice cream)
- shuiguo pai (fruit pie)
- buding (pudding)

Condiments:

- yan (salt)
- tang (sugar)
- cu (vinegar)
- jiang you (soy sauce)
- you (oil)
- jiao (pepper)
- la jiao (chili pepper)
- fan qie jiang (ketchup)

10.7 Transportation

Vehicles:

- che (vehicle, car)
- qi che (automobile, car)
- chu zu che (taxi)
- gong gong qi che (bus)
- di tie (subway, metro)
- huo che (train)
- gao tie (high-speed train)
- fei ji (airplane)
- chuang (boat, ship)
- zixing che (bicycle)
- mo tuo che (motorcycle)
- dian dong che (electric scooter)
- ka che (truck)
- jiao che (ambulance)
- xiao fang che (fire truck)
- jing che (police car)
- zhi sheng ji (helicopter)

Transportation Infrastructure:

- lu (road)

- jie (street)
- gao su gong lu (highway, expressway)
- qiao (bridge)
- sui dao (tunnel)
- che zhan (station)
- huo che zhan (train station)
- gong gong qi che zhan (bus station)
- ji chang (airport)
- gang kou (port, harbor)
- ma tou (dock, wharf)
- jia you zhan (gas station)
- ting che chang (parking lot)
- hong lu deng (traffic light)
- ban ma xian (zebra crossing, crosswalk)

10.8 Buildings and Places

Housing:

- fangzi (house)
- gong yu (apartment)
- bie shu (villa)
- su she (dormitory)
- lü guan (hotel, inn)
- fan dian (hotel, restaurant)

Rooms:

- fangjian (room)
- ke ting (living room)
- wo shi (bedroom)
- chu fang (kitchen)
- can ting (dining room)
- yu shi (bathroom)
- ce suo (toilet, restroom)

- shu fang (study)
- che ku (garage)
- yang tai (balcony)
- yuan zi (yard, courtyard)
- hua yuan (garden)
- wu ding (rooftop)
- di xia shi (basement)

Public Places:

- shangdian (store, shop)
- shang chang (shopping mall)
- chao shi (supermarket)
- shi chang (market)
- yin hang (bank)
- you ju (post office)
- yi yuan (hospital)
- zhen suo (clinic)
- yao dian (pharmacy)
- tu shu guan (library)
- xue xiao (school)
- you er yuan (kindergarten)
- xiao xue (elementary school)
- zhong xue (middle/high school)
- da xue (university)
- gong si (company)
- ban gong shi (office)
- gong chang (factory)
- can guan/fan dian (restaurant)
- ka fei dian (coffee shop)
- cha guan (tea house)
- jiu ba (bar, pub)
- jiu dian (hotel)

- dian ying yuan (cinema, movie theater)
- ju chang (theater)
- bo wu guan (museum)
- mei shu guan (art museum/gallery)
- gong yuan (park)
- dong wu yuan (zoo)
- you le chang (amusement park)
- ti yu guan (stadium, gymnasium)
- you yong chi (swimming pool)
- jiao tang (church)
- si miao (temple)
- qing zhen si (mosque)

City Features:

- cheng shi (city)
- xiang cun (countryside, village)
- shi zhong xin (city center, downtown)
- jie dao (street)
- guang chang (square, plaza)
- gong she (park)
- hu tai yuan (botanical garden)

10.9 Technology and Modern Life

Electronics:

- dian nao (computer)
- bi ji ben dian nao (laptop)
- ping ban dian nao (tablet)
- shou ji (mobile phone)
- zhi neng shou ji (smartphone)
- dian hua (telephone)
- dian shi (television)
- shou yin ji (radio)

- zhao xiang ji (camera)
- lu xiang ji (video camera)
- xiang ji (camera)
- shu ma xiang ji (digital camera)
- ji pan (keyboard)
- shu biao (mouse)
- yin xiang (speaker)
- er ji (headphones)
- mai ke feng (microphone)
- da yin ji (printer)
- sao miao yi (scanner)
- U pan (USB drive)

Internet and Communication:

- hu lian wang/wang lu (internet)
- dian zi you jian (email)
- wang zhan (website)
- wang ye (webpage)
- liu lan qi (browser)
- sou suo yin qing (search engine)
- she jiao mei ti (social media)
- wei xin (WeChat)
- duan xin (text message, SMS)
- shi pin tong hua (video call)
- xu ni xian shi (virtual reality)

Appliances:

- bing xiang (refrigerator)
- xi yi ji (washing machine)
- hong gan ji (dryer)
- wei bo lu (microwave oven)
- kao xiang (oven)
- dian fan (electric fan)

- kong tiao (air conditioner)
- nuan qi (heater)
- chui feng ji (hair dryer)
- dian dong ya shua (electric toothbrush)
- xi chen qi (vacuum cleaner)

10.10 Colors and Descriptions

Colors:

- yan se (color)
- hong se (red)
- huang se (yellow)
- lan se (blue)
- lü se (green)
- hei se (black)
- bai se (white)
- hui se (gray)
- fen hong se (pink)
- cheng se (orange)
- zi se (purple)
- zong se (brown)
- jin se (gold)
- yin se (silver)
- shen (dark, deep)
- qian (light, pale)
- xian yan (bright, vivid)
- an (dark, dim)

Patterns and Textures:

- hua wen (pattern)
- tiao wen (stripe)
- bo dian (polka dot)
- hua (floral pattern)

- guang hua (smooth)
- cu cao (rough)
- ruan (soft)
- ying (hard)

10.11 Emotions and Feelings

Positive Emotions:

- gao xing (happy)
- kuai le (joyful, happy)
- xing fu (blessed, happy)
- man yi (satisfied)
- gan dong (moved, touched)
- ji dong (excited)
- xing fen (excited, thrilled)
- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- man zu (satisfied)
- gan ji (grateful)
- zi hao (proud)
- zi xin (confident)
- xi wang (hope)
- le guan (optimistic)
- ping jing (calm, peaceful)
- qing song (relaxed)
- shu fu (comfortable)

Negative Emotions:

- nan guo (sad)
- shang xin (sad, heartbroken)
- ku (cry, weep)
- sheng qi (angry)
- fen nu (furious, angry)

- hai pa (afraid, scared)
- kong ju (fearful, terrified)
- jin zhang (nervous, tense)
- dan xin (worried)
- jiao lü (anxious)
- ya li (pressure, stress)
- lei (tired)
- pi lao (exhausted, fatigued)
- wu liao (bored)
- ji mo (lonely)
- gu du (solitary, lonely)
- ju sang (disappointed)
- hou hui (regret)
- chou hen (hate)
- ji du (jealous)
- kun huo (confused, puzzled)
- shang xin (upset, sad)

10.12 Activities and Hobbies

Sports:

- yun dong (sport, exercise)
- ti yu (physical education, sports)
- zu qiu (soccer, football)
- lan qiu (basketball)
- wang qiu (tennis)
- ping pang qiu (table tennis)
- pai qiu (volleyball)
- bang qiu (baseball)
- gan lan qiu (rugby, American football)
- yu mao qiu (badminton)
- gao er fu qiu (golf)
- bing qiu (ice hockey)

- hua bing (ice skating)
- hua xue (skiing)
- you yong (swimming)
- tiao shui (diving)
- pao bu (running, jogging)
- qi zi xing che (cycling)
- deng shan (mountain climbing, hiking)
- yu jia (yoga)
- wu shu (martial arts)
- tai ji quan (Tai Chi)
- quan ji (boxing)
- shai ma (horseback riding)

Hobbies:

- ai hao (hobby)
- du shu (reading)
- xie zuo (writing)
- hua hua (painting, drawing)
- she ying (photography)
- yin yue (music)
- chang ge (singing)
- tiao wu (dancing)
- tan gang qin (playing piano)
- tan ji ta (playing guitar)
- la xiao ti qin (playing violin)
- chui chang di (playing flute)
- ting yin yue (listening to music)
- kan dian ying (watching movies)
- kan dian shi (watching television)
- wan you xi (playing games)
- dian zi you xi (video games)
- peng ren (cooking)

- hong bei (baking)
- yuan yi (gardening)
- shou ji (collecting)
- lü you (traveling)
- ye ying (camping)
- diao yu (fishing)
- qi yi (playing chess)
- ma jiang (mahjong)
- pu ke (poker)
- bian zhi (knitting)
- ci xiu (embroidery)

10.13 Education and Learning

School Subjects:

- ke mu (subject, course)
- zhong wen (Chinese language)
- ying wen (English)
- shu xue (mathematics)
- ke xue (science)
- wu li (physics)
- hua xue (chemistry)
- sheng wu (biology)
- li shi (history)
- di li (geography)
- zheng zhi (politics)
- jing ji (economics)
- yi shu (art)
- yin yue (music)
- ti yu (physical education)
- dian nao (computer science)
- wen xue (literature)
- zhe xue (philosophy)

- xin li xue (psychology)
- she hui xue (sociology)
- fa lü (law)
- yi xue (medicine)
- gong cheng (engineering)
- shang ye (business)

School Items:

- shu (book)
- ke ben (textbook)
- bi ji ben (notebook)
- bi (pen)
- qian bi (pencil)
- gang bi (fountain pen)
- yuan zhu bi (ballpoint pen)
- xiang pi (eraser)
- chi (ruler)
- jiao shui (glue)
- jian dao (scissors)
- ding shu ji (stapler)
- jie shu qi (pencil sharpener)
- ji suan qi (calculator)
- zi dian (dictionary)
- di tu (map)
- bei bao (backpack)
- qian bi he (pencil case)
- zhi (paper)

Learning Activities:

- xue xi (study, learn)
- jiao (teach)
- du (read)
- xie (write)

- ting (listen)
- shuo (speak)
- lian xi (practice, exercise)
- fu xi (review)
- yu xi (preview)
- ji (remember, memorize)
- li jie (understand)
- si kao (think)
- yan jiu (research)
- kao shi (exam, test)
- zuo ye (homework)
- wen ti (question, problem)
- da an (answer)
- fen shu (score, grade)
- cheng ji (grade, achievement)
- bi ye (graduate)
- xue wei (degree)

10.14 Health and Medical Terms

Body Conditions:

- jian kang (healthy)
- sheng bing (to be sick)
- bing (illness, disease)
- teng (pain, ache)
- tou teng (headache)
- ya teng (toothache)
- du zi teng (stomachache)
- fa shao (fever)
- ke sou (cough)
- gan mao (cold, flu)
- liu gan (influenza)
- la du zi (diarrhea)

- ou tu (vomit)
- guo min (allergy)
- shang kou (wound, injury)
- gu zhe (bone fracture)
- shao shang (burn)
- liu xue (bleeding)

Medical Treatment:

- kan bing (see a doctor)
- zhen duan (diagnose)
- zhi liao (treat, treatment)
- yao (medicine)
- zhong yao (Chinese medicine)
- xi yao (Western medicine)
- yao pian (pill, tablet)
- yao shui (liquid medicine)
- da zhen (injection, shot)
- shou shu (surgery, operation)
- jian cha (examination, checkup)
- X guang (X-ray)
- hua yan (blood test)
- ti wen (body temperature)
- xue ya (blood pressure)
- chu fang (prescription)
- bang dai (bandage)
- gao yao (ointment)

Medical Specialists:

- yi sheng (doctor)
- hu shi (nurse)
- wai ke yi sheng (surgeon)
- nei ke yi sheng (physician)
- ya yi (dentist)

- yan ke yi sheng (ophthalmologist)
- er bi hou ke yi sheng (ENT doctor)
- pi fu ke yi sheng (dermatologist)
- er ke yi sheng (pediatrician)
- jing shen ke yi sheng (psychiatrist)

10.15 Money and Shopping

Money:

- qian (money)
- yuan (yuan, Chinese currency unit)
- kuai (colloquial for yuan)
- mao/jiao (10 cents)
- fen (cent)
- ying bi (coin)
- zhi bi (paper money, bill)
- xin yong ka (credit card)
- chu xu ka (debit card)
- xian jin (cash)
- yin hang ka (bank card)
- jia ge (price)
- duo shao qian (how much money)

Shopping:

- mai (buy)
- mai (sell)
- gou wu (shopping)
- gu ke (customer)
- shou huo yuan (salesperson)
- fu qian (pay money)
- zhao qian (give change)
- gui (expensive)
- pian yi (cheap)

- zhe kou (discount)
- da zhe (on sale, discount)
- mian fei (free of charge)
- shou ju (receipt)
- tui huo (return goods)
- huan huo (exchange goods)
- shi chuan (try on clothes)
- bao zhuang (packaging, wrap)
- song huo (delivery)

10.16 Common Verbs - Extended List

Motion Verbs:

- zou (walk, go, leave)
- pao (run)
- tiao (jump)
- fei (fly)
- you (swim)
- pa (climb, crawl)
- gun (roll)
- hua (slide)
- kai (drive)
- qi (ride)
- zuo (sit, take [transport])

Action Verbs:

- zuo (do, make)
- gong zuo (work)
- xiu xi (rest)
- shui jiao (sleep)
- qi chuang (get up)
- xi zao (take a bath)
- xi lian (wash face)

- shua ya (brush teeth)
- ti tou (comb hair)
- chuan (wear, put on)
- tuo (take off)
- kai (open, start)
- guan (close, turn off)
- da kai (open)
- guan shang (close)
- na (take, hold)
- fang (put, place)
- song (send, give as gift)
- jie (receive, borrow)
- jie (lend)
- huan (return, give back)
- wen (ask)
- da (answer, reply)
- gao su (tell, inform)
- wen (smell)
- ting (listen)
- kan (see, look, watch)
- kan jian (see, catch sight of)
- ting jian (hear)
- peng (touch)
- mo (touch, feel)

Communication Verbs:

- shuo (speak, say)
- shuo hua (speak, talk)
- jiang (speak, tell)
- tan (chat, talk)
- jiao (call, be named)
- wen (ask)

- hui da (answer, reply)
- jie shi (explain)
- miao shu (describe)
- tao lun (discuss)
- zheng lun (argue, debate)
- da dian hua (make a phone call)
- fa duan xin (send text message)
- fa you jian (send email)

Mental Verbs:

- xiang (think, want)
- si kao (think, ponder)
- ji de (remember)
- wang ji (forget)
- zhi dao (know)
- ren shi (know [people], recognize)
- dong (understand)
- ming bai (understand, realize)
- xiang xin (believe)
- huai yi (doubt)
- xi wang (hope)
- qi dai (expect, look forward to)
- jue de (feel, think)

Emotion Verbs:

- ai (love)
- xi huan (like)
- tao yan (dislike, hate)
- hai pa (be afraid)
- dan xin (worry)
- gao xing (be happy)
- shang xin (be sad)
- sheng qi (be angry)

- xiao (laugh, smile)
- ku (cry)

Part 11: Sentence Patterns and Expressions

11.1 Greetings and Polite Expressions

Greetings:

1. Ni hao! (Hello!)
2. Nin hao! (Hello! - formal)
3. Da jia hao! (Hello everyone!)
4. Zao shang hao! (Good morning!)
5. Wan shang hao! (Good evening!)
6. Wan an! (Good night!)
7. Ni hao ma? (How are you?)
8. Ni zui jin zen me yang? (How have you been lately?)
9. Hen jiu bu jian! (Long time no see!)
10. Huan ying! (Welcome!)

Farewells:

1. Zai jian! (Goodbye!)
2. Ming tian jian! (See you tomorrow!)
3. Hui tou jian! (See you later!)
4. Yi hui jian! (See you in a bit!)
5. Wan an! (Good night!)
6. Bai bai! (Bye bye!)
7. Zou hao! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
8. Man zou! (Take care! - said to departing guest)
9. Yi lu ping an! (Have a safe journey!)
10. Bao zhong! (Take care of yourself!)

Polite Expressions:

1. Xie xie! (Thank you!)
2. Duo xie! (Thank you very much!)

3.Bu ke qi! (You're welcome!)
4.Bu yong xie! (No need to thank!)
5.Mei guan xi! (It's okay! / No problem!)
6.Dui bu qi! (Sorry! / Excuse me!)
7.Mei shi! (It's nothing! / No problem!)
8.Qing! (Please!)
9.Qing wen! (Excuse me, may I ask...)
10.Ma fan ni le! (Sorry to trouble you!)
11.Bu hao yi si! (Sorry! / Embarrassed!)
12.Zhen bao qian! (I'm really sorry!)
13.Qing yuan liang! (Please forgive me!)
14.Mei you guan xi! (It doesn't matter!)
15.Zhu ni hao yun! (Good luck!)

Making Requests:

1.Qing bang mang! (Please help!)
2.Ke yi bang wo ma? (Can you help me?)
3.Qing gei wo... (Please give me...)
4.Wo xiang yao... (I would like...)
5.Ke yi ma? (Is it okay? / May I?)
6.Qing shao deng! (Please wait a moment!)
7.Qing zai shuo yi bian! (Please say it again!)
8.Qing shuo man yi dian! (Please speak slower!)
9.Qing wen... (May I ask... / Excuse me...)
10.Neng bu neng...? (Can you...?)

11.2 Common Question Patterns

What Questions:

1.Zhe shi shen me? (What is this?)
2.Ni zai zuo shen me? (What are you doing?)
3.Ni xiang chi shen me? (What do you want to eat?)
4.Ni de ming zi shi shen me? (What is your name?)
5.Ni de gong zuo shi shen me? (What is your job?)
6.Zhe ge zen me shuo? (How do you say this?)
7.Shen me yi si? (What does it mean?)

8.Fa sheng le shen me shi? (What happened?)
9.Ni you shen me wen ti? (What questions do you have?)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Who Questions:

1.Ni shi shei? (Who are you?)
2.Ta shi shei? (Who is he/she?)
3.Shei zai nar? (Who is there?)
4.Shei de? (Whose is it?)
5.Ni zhao shei? (Who are you looking for?)
6.Shei lai le? (Who came?)
7.Shei zhi dao? (Who knows?)
8.Shei xiang qu? (Who wants to go?)
9.Ni gen shei qu? (Who are you going with?)
10.Shei jiao ni de? (Who taught you?)

Where Questions:

1.Ni zai nar? (Where are you?)
2.Ni qu nar? (Where are you going?)
3.Ni zhu zai nar? (Where do you live?)
4.Ce suo zai nar? (Where is the bathroom?)
5.Zhe ge zai nar mai? (Where can I buy this?)
6.Ni cong nar lai? (Where are you from?)
7.Ni de shu zai nar? (Where is your book?)
8.Wo men zai nar jian mian? (Where shall we meet?)
9.Ta qu nar le? (Where did he/she go?)
10.Ni xiang qu nar? (Where do you want to go?)

When Questions:

1.Shen me shi hou? (When?)
2.Ji dian? (What time?)
3.Ji yue? (What month?)
4.Ji hao? (What date?)
5.Xing qi ji? (What day of the week?)
6.Ni shen me shi hou lai? (When will you come?)
7.Ni ji dian qi chuang? (What time do you get up?)

8. Ni shen me shi hou you kong? (When are you free?)
9. Huo che ji dian kai? (What time does the train leave?)
10. Ni shen me shi hou chu sheng? (When were you born?)

How Questions:

1. Zen me yang? (How is it? / How about it?)
2. Zen me qu? (How to go?)
3. Zen me zuo? (How to do it?)
4. Zen me shuo? (How to say it?)
5. Zen me hui shi? (What's going on? / How come?)
6. Ni zen me le? (What's wrong with you?)
7. Zen me ban? (What to do?)
8. Zhe ge zen me yong? (How to use this?)
9. Zen me zou? (How to get there?)
10. Ni jue de zen me yang? (What do you think? / How do you feel about it?)

Why Questions:

1. Wei shen me? (Why?)
2. Ni wei shen me bu qu? (Why don't you go?)
3. Wei shen me bu xing? (Why not?)
4. Ta wei shen me sheng qi? (Why is he/she angry?)
5. Ni wei shen me zhe me wan? (Why are you so late?)
6. Wei shen me bu ke yi? (Why can't [we/I]?)
7. Ni wei shen me bu chi? (Why don't you eat?)
8. Wei shen me yao zhe yang? (Why must it be this way?)
9. Ta wei shen me ku? (Why is he/she crying?)
10. Wei shen me mei you ren? (Why is there no one?)

How Many/Much Questions:

1. Duo shao? (How many? / How much?)
2. Ji ge? (How many?)
3. Duo shao qian? (How much money?)
4. Ni you ji ge xiong di jie mei? (How many siblings do you have?)

5.Ni duo da? / Ni ji sui? (How old are you?)
6.Duo yuan? (How far?)
7.Duo jiu? (How long [time]?)
8.Duo chang? (How long [length]?)
9.Ni you duo gao? (How tall are you?)
10.Duo zhong? (How heavy?)

11.3 Making Suggestions and Offers

Suggestions:

1.Women qu kan dian ying ba! (Let's go watch a movie!)
2.Zhe yang hao bu hao? (How about this?)
3.Ni kan zen me yang? (What do you think?)
4.Wo jian yi... (I suggest...)
5.Ni jue de... zen me yang? (What do you think about...?)
6.Bu ru... (How about...? / Why don't we...?)
7.Women ke yi... (We can...)
8.Yao bu yao...? (Do you want to...?)
9.Women zou ba! (Let's go!)
10.Hao bu hao? (Is that okay? / Okay?)

Offers:

1.Wo lai bang ni! (Let me help you!)
2.Wo qing ni! (My treat! / It's on me!)
3.Yao bu yao wo bang ni? (Do you want me to help you?)
4.Wo gei ni... (I'll give you... / Let me give you...)
5.Rang wo lai! (Let me do it!)
6.Wo song ni! (I'll give it to you! / I'll take you!)
7.Ni xiang bu xiang...? (Would you like to...?)
8.Wo neng wei ni zuo shen me? (What can I do for you?)
9.Wo lai fu qian! (Let me pay!)
10.Wo gei ni da dian hua! (I'll call you!)

11.4 Expressing Opinions and Preferences

Likes and Dislikes:

1.Wo xi huan... (I like...)
2.Wo hen xi huan... (I really like...)
3.Wo zui xi huan... (I like...the most / My favorite is...)
4.Wo ai... (I love...)
5.Wo bu xi huan... (I don't like...)
6.Wo tao yan... (I hate...)
7.Wo bu tai xi huan... (I don't really like...)
8.Wo dui...gan xing qu. (I'm interested in...)
9.Wo dui...mei xing qu. (I'm not interested in...)
10.Wo xi huan...duo yu... (I like...more than...)

Opinions:

1.Wo jue de... (I think... / I feel...)
2.Wo ren wei... (I believe... / In my opinion...)
3.Wo de yi jian shi... (My opinion is...)
4.Wo tong yi. (I agree.)
5.Wo bu tong yi. (I disagree.)
6.Ni shuo de dui. (You're right.)
7.Wo bu zhe me xiang. (I don't think so.)
8.Ke neng ba. (Maybe. / Perhaps.)
9.Dang ran! (Of course!)
10.Que shi shi zhe yang. (That's indeed the case.)
11.Wo bu que ding. (I'm not sure.)
12.Wo ye zhe me xiang. (I think so too.)
13.Ni jue de ne? (What do you think?)
14.Zhe shi hao zhu yi! (That's a good idea!)
15.Zhe bu shi hao ban fa. (This is not a good solution.)

11.5 Expressing Ability and Possibility

Ability:

1.Wo hui... (I can... / I know how to...)
2.Wo neng... (I can... / I'm able to...)
3.Wo ke yi... (I can... / I may...)
4.Wo bu hui... (I can't... / I don't know how to...)
5.Wo zuo de dao. (I can do it.)

6.Wo zuo bu dao. (I can't do it.)
7.Wo xue hui le. (I learned it / I know how now.)
8.Ta hen neng gan. (He/she is very capable.)
9.Wo you neng li. (I have the ability.)
10.Wo ban de dao. (I can manage it.)

Possibility:

1.Ke neng. (Possible. / Maybe.)
2.You ke neng. (It's possible.)
3.Mei ke neng. / Bu ke neng. (Impossible.)
4.Ye xu. (Perhaps.)
5.Hui...de. (Will... / Likely to...)
6.Bu hui...de. (Won't... / Unlikely to...)
7.Da gai. (Probably.)
8.Huo xu. (Perhaps. / Maybe.)
9.Shuo bu ding. (Hard to say. / Maybe.)
10.Nan shuo. (Hard to say.)

11.6 Expressing Needs and Wants

Wants:

1.Wo yao... (I want...)
2.Wo xiang... (I would like to...)
3.Wo xiang yao... (I want...)
4.Wo bu yao. (I don't want.)
5.Wo xi wang... (I hope...)
6.Wo qin dai... (I look forward to...)
7.Wo yuan yi... (I'm willing to... / I'd like to...)
8.Wo xiang mai... (I want to buy...)
9.Ni yao shen me? (What do you want?)
10.Ni xiang yao shen me? (What would you like?)

Needs:

1.Wo xu yao... (I need...)
2.Wo bi xu... (I must...)
3.Wo dei... (I have to... / I must...)

4.Wo ying gai... (I should...)
5.Wo yao... (I need to... / I have to...)
6.Wo bu bi... (I don't need to...)
7.Wo bu xu yao. (I don't need.)
8.Zhe shi bi yao de. (This is necessary.)
9.Wo xu yao bang zhu. (I need help.)
10.Ni xu yao shen me? (What do you need?)

Part 12: Dialogue Examples

12.1 Meeting Someone

Dialogue 1: First Meeting

A: Ni hao! Wo jiao Li Ming. (Hello! My name is Li Ming.) B: Ni hao! Wo jiao Wang Hong. Hen gao xing ren shi ni. (Hello! My name is Wang Hong. Nice to meet you.) A: Wo ye hen gao xing ren shi ni. Ni shi na guo ren? (I'm also happy to meet you. What nationality are you?) B: Wo shi Zhongguo ren. Ni ne? (I'm Chinese. And you?) A: Wo shi Meiguo ren. Ni zhu zai nar? (I'm American. Where